INTRODUCTION ................................................................................................... 2
I. THE WORLD AND NATURE .............................................................................. 3
II. SPACE AND TIME .......................................................................................... 7
III. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY ................................................................. 15
IV. PROPERTIES OF THE HUMAN BODY ...................................................... 18
V. HUMAN LIFE; ITS VARIOUS RELATIONS AND CONDITIONS .................... 25
VI. THE MIND; ITS FUNCTIONS ........................................................................ 43
VII. THE ARTS AND SCIENCES ........................................................................ 52
VIII. SPEECH AND WRITING .......................................................................... 67
IX. THE EMOTIONS ............................................................................................ 80
X. VIRTUES AND VICES ................................................................................... 90
XI. RELIGION ................................................................................................... 96
XII. DOMESTIC LIFE........................................................................................ 100
XIII. COMMERCE AND AGRICULTURE ......................................................... 109
XIV. THE STATE................................................................................................ 114
XV. LAW AND JUSTICE .................................................................................. 128
XVI. WAR ........................................................................................................ 133
XVII. SHIPPING ............................................................................................. 147
APPENDIX ........................................................................................................ 150
**Introduction**

Carl Meissner’s „Lateinische Phraseologie“, first published in 1878, is a rich source of Latin idioms. I chose to transcribe its English translation by H.W. Auden, the „Latin Phrase-Book“ to supplement Walter Ripman’s „Classified Vocabulary“, an equally useful book for Latin vocabulary, also transcribed by me and freely available.

Meissner’s book of Latin phrases is based on his own collections and excerpts from Cicero, Caesar, and Livy, as well as various secondary literature.

But let Carl Meissner himself tell us about his work:  

„It cannot be denied that, while grammatical competence is rightly aimed at in the classical secondary schools [the German „Gymnasien“], and probably successfully so, the ability to freely use the language has not always kept abreast of it. The explanation for this can be found in one-sided concentration on purely formal aspects which lead to a neglect of the language in its expressions and phrases. It is, however, not enough to merely educate the pupils concerning grammar and style. Instead, one also has to methodically aim at enabling them to have at least some command of the language material. This goal, however, will not be attained either by time-consuming dictation of the phrases, or by leaving it up to the pupil to collect them. Instead the pupil has to be offered a definite but narrow stock of phrases for firm and sure acquisition which will then be available to him in the composition exercises.

Accordingly, only the most common and frequent phrases have been included in this phraseology, whereas all phrases have been omitted for which the student probably will have no use. It is then up to the pupil to broaden the material offered in this phraseology based on his reading matter."

As for the structure and content of the book:

„The phrases themselves are arranged in seventeen rather comprehensive categories, and these in turn have been divided into smaller groups for easier overall view. In doing so I have followed practical rather than strictly logical considerations. Furthermore, I found it appropriate to proceed from the Latin phrases in order not to stray too often into comparative stylistics which would have been unavoidable due to the differences of Latin and German idioms. I solely endeavoured to show which words can be combined in Latin, not how this or that German idiom might be best expressed in Latin."

Based on the curricula for the German „Gymnasien“, Meissner suggested the following sequence:

- Sections 1, 2, 16, 17 (The World and Nature; Space and Time; War; Shipping).
- Sections 3, 4, 5, 12 (Parts of the Human Body; Properties of the Human Body; Human Life, its various Relations and Conditions; Domestic Life).
- Sections 14, 15, 11, 13, 6 (The State; Law and Justice; Religion; Commerce and Agriculture; The Mind, its Functions).
- Sections 7, 8, 9, 10 (The Arts and Sciences; Speech and Writing; The Emotions; Virtues and Vices).

In the hope that this work will be of use,

29 October 2015 – Carolus Raeticus

---

2 Translation (more or less free) made by the transcriber.
I. The World and Nature

1. The World—Creation

rerum or mundi universitas the universe.
rerum natura or simply natura creation; nature.
haec omnia, quae videmus the visible world.
totius mundi convenientia et consensus the perfect harmony of the universe.


deu[s] mundum aedificavit, fabricatus est, God made the world.
effect [not creavit] 3

deu[s] est mundi procreator (not creator),
aedificator, fabricator, opifex rerum the elements.
elementa; initia or principia rerum the elements and first beginnings.
nutus et pondus or simply nutus (ροπή) gravity.

2. The Earth and its Surface

orbis terrae, terrarum 4 the earth; the globe
(terra) continens (B. G. 5. 8. 2) the continent.
terra (regio) mediterranea an inland region; the interior.
terra (regio) mediterranea an inland region; the interior.
interior Asia; interiora Asiae the interior of Asia.
sinus urbis (Sall. Cat. 52. 35) the heart of the city.
in ipsam or intimam Graeciam penetrale to penetrate into the heart of Greece.

terra effert (more rarely fert, 5 but not
profert) fruges the earth brings forth fruit, crops.
terra fundit fruges the earth brings forth fruit abundantly.
animata (animalia) inanimaque  (not
inanima) animate and inanimate nature.
ea, quae terra gignit the vegetable kingdom.
ea, quae e terra gignuntur the vegetable kingdom.
ea, quae a terra stirpibus continentur the vegetable kingdom.
ea quorum stirpes terra continentur (N. D. 2.
10. 26) the vegetable kingdom.
arbores stirpesque, herbae stirpesque (De
Fin. 5. 11. 33) the vegetable kingdom.
radices agere (De Off. 2. 12. 73) to take root.
gemmas agere to bud, blossom.
gemmae proveniunt the trees are budding.

data is usually employed in the sense of producing, originating, causing, e.g. similitudo creat
errorem; periculum alicui creare. It has, however, occasionally the meaning to create, e.g. De Fin.
erum quas creat natura.

to the Romans orbis terrarum (more rarely orbis terrae) meant all those countries which made up
the Roman Empire.

to produce, e.g. haec aetas perfectum oratorem tuit (Brut. 12.
45).
arbores frondescunt
rami late diffunduntur
montes vestiti silvis
summus mons
culmina Alpium
sub radicibus montis, in infimo monte, sub monte
superare Alpes, Pyreneaeum, Apenninum
altissimis montibus undique contineri
prospectus est ad aliquid
colls leniter ab infimo acclivis
ad extremum tumulum
loca edita, superiora
loca aspera et montuosa
loca plana or simply plana
saxa praerupta
loca inculta
loca deserta (opp. frequentia)
loca amoena, amoenitas locorum
summa aqua
ex aqua extare
aqua est umbilicus tenus
aqua pectus aequat, superat
(ae) ex aqua emergere
aquam ex flumine derivare
aquam ducere per hortum

3. Water—Rivers—Sea

agros irrigare
aqua viva, profluens (opp. stagnum)
aqua iugis, perennis
frigidā, calidā lavari (Plin. Ep. 3. 5. 11)
aque, aquarum inops
fluctuare or fluctuari
fluctibus lactari
fluctibus (undis) obrui, submergi

6 But Pyrenaei montes, saltus occur (B. G. 1. 1. 7; B.C. 1. 37. 1).
7 Also used metaphorically, e.g. (se) emergere ex malis (Nep. Att. 11. 1) to recover from misfortune.
So emergere e fluctibus servitutis (Harusp. Resp. 23. 48).
8 aquae ductio = the action, process of drawing off the water; canalis = the water-pipe, channel, conduit.
9 So metaphorically, aere alieno obrutum esse, to be over head and ears in debt; nomen alicuius obnuere perpetua oblivione, to drown a person's name in oblivion.
gurgitibus hauriri to be drowned in the eddies.
flumen citatum fertur the rivers flows with a rapid current.
flumen imbribus auctum a river swollen by the rain.
flumen super ripas effunditur the river is over its banks, is in flood.
flumen extra ripas diffuit the river floods the fields.
flumen vado transire to wade across, to ford a river.
flumine secundo with the stream; downstream.
flumine adverso against the stream; upstream.
Rhenus oritur or profluit ex Alpibus the Rhine rises in the Alps.
accessus et recessus aestuum the ebb and flow (of tide).
Aestus maritimi mutuo accedentes et recedentes (N. D. 2. 53. 132)
Aestus ex alto se incitat (B. G. 3. 12)
Aestus rursus minuente when the tide begins to go down.
mare ventorum vi agitatur et turbatur there is a storm at sea.
mare medium or internum the Mediterranean Sea.

4. Fire

ignem facere, accendere to light, make a fire.
ignem tectis inferre, subicere to set fire to houses.
ignem concipere, comprehendere to take fire.
ignem excitare (pro Mur. 25. 51) to make up, stir up a fire.
ignem alere to keep up a fire.
accendere, incendere aedificia to set buildings on fire.
flammarum urbem to set fire to a city.
flammis corripi to be devoured by the flames.
incendio flagrare, or simply conflagrare, ardere (Liv. 30. 7) to be on fire, in flames.
incendio deleri, absūmi to be burned to ashes.
igni cremari, necari to perish in the flames.
ignem conclamare to raise an alarm of fire.
ventus ignem distulit (B. G. 5. 43) the wind spread the conflagration.

5. Air—Sky—Climate—Heavenly Bodies

aer terrae circumiectus or circumfusus the atmosphere.
aer qui est terrae proximus the atmosphere.
suspicere (in) caelum to raise the eyes to heaven; to look up to the sky.
oculos tollere, attollere ad caelum to raise the eyes to heaven; to look up to the sky.

10 Inundation = eluvio, not inundatio which is post-classical.
11 The Romans called it mare nostrum (B.G. 5.1). Similarly mare Oceanus (B. G. 3. 7), the Atlantic; mare superum, the Adriatic (Att. 8. 16. 1); mare inferum, the Etruscan Sea (Att. 8. 3. 5).
12 suspicere is also used figuratively, to look up to, esteem, honour, e.g. viros, honores. Similarly despicere.
sub divo
orbi finiens (Div. 2, 44, 92)
caelum or natura caeli
caelum salubre, salubritas caeli (opp. grave, gravitas)
caeli temperatio
aer calore et frigore temperatus
caeli asperitas
caeleste
caelum oricibus

6. Natural Phenomena

vocis imago, or simply imago
saxa vocis respondunt or resonant
ventus remittit (opp. increbescit)
ventus cadit, cessat
ventis secundis, adversis uti
ventus se vertit in Africum
tempestas cooritur
imber tenet (Liv. 23, 44, 6)
imbres repente effusi
tempestatem idoneam, bonam nancisci
calor se frangit (opp. increcicit)
sol ardet, urit
ardore solis tormenti
tanta vis frigoris insecuta est, ut
frigore (gelu) rigere, torpere
frigore confici

an echo.
the rocks re-echo.
the wind is falling.
the wind dies down, ceases.
to have favourable, contrary, winds.
to be dried up by the sun's heat.
to be numb with cold.
to freeze to death.

For an account of an eclipse vid. Liv. 44, 37.
Also metaphorically, e.g. gloria virtuti resonat tamquam imago (Tusc. 3, 3), glory is as it were the echo of virtue.
aestus et frigoris patientem esse
tempestas cum magno fragore (caeli)
tonitribusque (Liv. 1. 16)
caelum tonitru contremit
fulmina micant
fulmen locum tetigit
fulmine tangi, ici
de caelo tangi, percuti
fulmine ictus
eruptiones ignium Aetnaeorum
Vesuvius evomit (more strongly eructat)
ignes
venti ab ortu solis flant
to be able to bear heat and cold.
a storm accompanied by heavy claps of thunder.
the heavens are shaken by the thunder.
the lightning flashes.
the lightning has struck somewhere.
to be struck by lightning.
to be struck by lightning.
to be struck by lightning.
an eruption of Etna.
Vesuvius is discharging flame.

II. Space and Time

1. Points of the Compass—Situation

spectare in (vergere ad) orientem (solem),
occidentem (solem), ad meridiem, in septentriones
spectare inter occasum solis et septentriones
Germania quae or Germaniae ea pars quae,
ad orientem, occidentem vergit
est a septentrionibus collis
situs loci
natura loci
opportunitas loci (B. G. 3. 14)
opportuno loco situm or positum esse
urbs situ ad aspectum praeclara est
oppidum mari adiacet
villae tangit viam
oppidum colli impositum est
oppidum monti subiectum est
promunturium in mare procerrit
paeninsula in mare excurrit, procerrit
promunturium superare
urbs in sinu sita est
to lie to the east, west, south, north.
to be situate to the north-west.
eastern, western Germany.
a hill lies to the north.
the situation of a place.
the natural position of a place.
the advantageous situation of a place.
to be favourably situated.
the city is very beautifully situated.
the town lies near the sea.
the country-house stands near the road.
the town stands on rising ground.
the town lies at the foot of a mountain.
a promontory juts out into the sea.
a peninsula projects into the sea.
to double a cape.
the city is situate on a bay.

2. Boundary—Territory—Distance

tangere, attingere terram
to be contiguous, adjacent to a country.

15 Used sometimes figuratively, e.g. fulmen verborum, fulmina eloquentiae, fulmina fortunae (Tusc. 2. 27), fulmina imperii (Balb. 15. 34).
16 "The east" and "the west" = orientis, occidentis (solis) terrae, partes, regiones, gentes. The adjectives orientalis, occidentalis are not used in good Latin. The north, i.e. northern countries, is represented by terrae septentrionibus subiectae; the south by terra australis.
finitimum esse terrae
continentem esse terrae or cum terra (Fam. 15. 2. 2)

Gallia Rhodano continetur (vid. sect. V. 4., note contineri aliqua re...)
Rhodanus Sequanos ab Helvetiis dividit

to be contiguous, adjacent to a country.
to have the same boundaries; to be coterminous.

Gaul is bounded by the Rhone. 18

the Rhone 19 is the frontier between the Helvetii and the Sequani.
to enlarge the boundaries of a kingdom.
to evacuate territory.

in the country of the Sequani.
to invade the territory of the Sequani.
to stretch northwards.

the territory of this race extends as far as the Rhine.
to extend in breadth, in length.
to have a wide extent.

the empire reaches to the ends of the world.
to be far from town.
to be not far away.
to be equidistant.

the road is the same length.
at a great distance.
to be separated by an immense interval of space and time.
a mile away.
from a distance.
distant places.

the most distant countries, the world's end.
the most distant countries, the world's end.
distant nations.

3. Road—Travel

viam sternere (silice, saxo)
substruere viam glarea (Liv. 41. 27)
via strata
via trita 21

to pave a road.
to make a gravel path.
a street, a made road.
a well-trodden, much-frequented way.

17 vicinum esse, to be neighbouring; used of houses, gardens, etc.
18 Transcriber's Note: The English original says "Gaul is bounded by the Rhine" which is wrong as can be seen both from the Latin expression and the original German edition.
19 Transcriber's Note: In the original book Auden translates "Rhodanus Sequanos ab Helvetiis dividit" wrongly as "the Rhine is the frontier between the Helvetii and the Sequani." The French and German versions correctly translate "Rhodanus" as "le Rhône" and "Rhone".
20 patere denotes extension in its widest sense; pertinere, extension from one point to another, e.g. ars et late patet et ad multos pertinet (De Or. 1. 55. 235); ex eo oppido pars ad Helvetios pertinet (B. G. 1. 6. 3).
21 tritus is also used figuratively, e.g. proverbium (sermone) tritum (De Off. 1. 10. 33), vocabulum latino sermone non tritum (Acad. 1. 7. 27).
viam munire  to make a road.
viam patefacere, aperire  to open a route.
ferro viam facere (per confertos hostes)  to cut one's way (through the enemies' ranks).
viam intercludere  to obstruct a road; to close a route.
iter obstruere  to obstruct a road; to close a route.
via fert, ducit aliquo  a road leads somewhere.
in viam se dare  to set out on a journey.
viae se committere  to set out on a journey.
viam ingredi, inire (also metaphorically)  to enter upon a route; to take a road.
rectā (viā)  straight on.
de via declinare, deflectere (also metaphorically)  to turn aside from the right way; to deviate.
(de via) decedere alicui  make way for any one.
Appia via proficisci  to set out by the Appian road.
erranti viam monstrare  to direct a person who has lost his way.
 errores Ulixis  the wanderings of Ulysses.
viam persequi (also metaphorically)  to continue one's journey, pursue one's course.
longam viam conficere  to accomplish a long journey.
fessus de via  weary with travelling; way-worn.
Hercules 23 in trivio, in bivio, in compitis  Hercules at the cross-roads, between virtue and vice.
iter facere  (1) to take a journey, (2) to make, lay down a road (rare).
una iter facere  to travel together.
iter ingredi (pedibus, equo, terra)  to begin a journey (on foot, on horseback, by land).
iter aliquo dirigere, intendere  to journey towards a place.
tendere aliquo  to journey towards a place.
longum itineris spatium emetiri  to finish a very long journey.
ex itinere redire 24 to return from a journey.
in itinere  on a journey; by the way.
iter terrestre, pedestre  travel by land, on foot.
itinera diurna nocturnaque  travelling day and night.
itineri diurna nocturnaque  a day's journey.
iter unius diei or simply diei  an impassable road.
disiunctissimas ultimas terras peragrare (not permigrare)  to travel through the most remote countries.
peregrinatio  a foreign journey.
peregrinari, peregre esse  to be travelling abroad.
peregrinatio  to go abroad.

---

22 Cf. in metaphorical sense, viam ad honores alicui munire (Mur. 10. 23).
23 vid. on this subject De Off. 1. 32. 118; Fam. 5. 12. 3.
24 reverti means properly to turn back and retrace one's steps, after giving up one's intention of remaining longer in a place, or continuing one's journey, cf. Div. 1. 15. 27, itaque revertit ex itinere, cum iam progressus esset multorum dierum viam. Similarly reditus = return, reversio generally= turning back. Cicero only uses revenire in conjunction with domum.
25 ex itinere implies that the march was interrupted, thus there is a difference between in itinere aliquem aggredi and ex itinere, etc. In the same way distinguish in fuga and ex fuga, e.g. ex fuga evadere, ex fuga dissipati.
aliquem proficisceretem prosequi to accompany any one when starting; to see a person off.

aliquem proficisceretem votis omnibusque prosequi (vid. sect. VI. 11, note Prosequi...) to wish any one a prosperous journey.

rus excurre to make a pleasure-trip into the country.
ruri vivere, rusticari to live in the country.
vita rustica country life (the life of resident farmers, etc.)
rusticatio, vita rusticana country life (of casual, temporary visitors).

4. Coming—Going

pedibus ire to go on foot.
discedere a, de, ex loco aliquo to leave a place.
egredi loco, 26 excedere ex loco to leave a place.
decedere loco, de, ex loco 27 to quit a place for ever.
ingredi, intrare urbem, introire in urbem to enter a city.
ingredi, exire to go in at, go out of a gate.
extra portam egredi to go outside the gate.
ingredi in unum locum convenire, confluere to collect together at one spot.
Romam venire, pervenire to come to Rome.
adventus Romam, in urbem arrival in Rome, in town.
in unum locum convenire, confluere to collect together at one spot.
Romam concurrere (Mil. 15. 39) to stream towards Rome.
obviam ire alicui to send to meet a person.
obviam venire alicui to meet, come across a person; to meet casually.
obviam venire alicui to meet, come across a person; to meet casually.
obviam esse, obviam fieri to meet, come across a person; to meet casually.
incidere in aliquem to meet, come across a person; to meet casually.
offendere, nancisci aliquem to send to meet a person.

5. Riding—Driving

curru vehi, in rheda (Mil. 21. 55) to drive.
equo vehi to ride.
sternere equum to saddle a horse.
conscendere equum to mount.
ascendere in equum to mount.
descendere ex equo to dismount.
in equo sedere; equo insidire to be on horseback.

26 relinquere, e.g. domum, properly means to give up, renounce the possession or enjoyment of a place.
27 Cf. especially decedere (ex, de) provincia, used regularly of a magistrate leaving his province on expiry of his term of office. Similarly, where life is compared to a province, decedere (de) vita, or merely decedere = to quit this life, die (cf. De Sen. 20. 73).
(in) equo haerere to sit a horse well; to have a good seat.
calcaria subdere equo to put spurs to a horse.
calcaribus equum concitare to put spurs to a horse.
equo citato or admisso at full gallop.
freno remisso; effusis habenis with loose reins.
equum in aliquem concitare ride against any one at full speed; charge a person.
habenas adducere to tighten the reins.
habenas permittere to slacken the reins.
admittere, permittere equum to give a horse the reins.
frenos 28 dare equo to give a horse the reins.
agitare equum to make a horse prance.
moderari equum to manage a horse.
equi consternantur the horses are panic-stricken, run away.
equos incitatos sustinere to bring horses to the halt when at full gallop.

6. Walking—Footsteps—Direction

gradum facere to take a step.
gradum addere (sc. gradui) (Liv. 26. 9) to increase one’s pace.
suspenso gradu on tiptoe.
gradum sensim referre to retreat step by step.
vestigia alicuius sequi, persequi or vestigiis to follow in any one’s steps.
vestigiis alicuius insistere, ingredi (also metaph.)
loco or vestigio se non movere not to stir from one’s place.
recta (regione, via); in directum in a straight line.
obliquum monte decurrere in an oblique direction; sideways.
in contrarium; in contrarias partes to run obliquely down the hill.
in transversum, e transverso across; transversely.
quoquo versus; in omnes partes in all directions.
in diversas partes or simply diversi abeunt, they disperse in different directions.
discendunt
huc (et) illuc hither and thither.
ultra citroque on this side and on that; to and fro.
longe lateque, passim (e.g. fluere) far and wide; on all sides; everywhere.

7. Movement in General

se conferre in aliquem locum to go to a place.
petere locum to go to a place.
quo tendis? where are you going?
sublimem or sublime (not in sublime or sublimiter) ferri, abire to fly aloft; to be carried into the sky.
praecipitem ire; in praeceps deferri to fall down headlong.

28 Cf. frenos, calcaria alicui adhibere, used metaphorically.
in profundum deici to fall down into the abyss.
se deicere de muro to throw oneself from the ramparts.
decere aliquem de saxo Tarpeio to throw some one down the Tarpeian rock.
Nilus praecipitat\(^{29}\) ex altissimis montibus

se proripere ex domo to rush out of the house.
humi procumbere to fall on the ground.
humi prostrernere aliquem to throw any one to the ground.
in terram cadere, decidere to fall to the earth.
in terram demergi to sink into the earth.
appropinquare urbi, rarely ad urbem to draw near to a city.
propius accedere ad urbem or urbem to advance nearer to the city.
longius progredi, procedere to march further forward.
Romam versus proficisci to advance in the direction of Rome.
ad Romam proficisci to set out for Rome.
he starts in all haste, precipitately.
properat, maturat proficisci to catch some one up.
consequi, assequi aliquem to overtake and pass some one.
post se relinquere aliquem to overtake and pass some one.
multitudo circumfunditur aliquui a crowd throngs around some one.
per totum corpus diffundii to spread over the whole body.

8. Time in General

tempus praeterit, transit time passes.
tempus habere aliqui rei to have time for a thing.
tempus mihi deest ad aliquid faciendum I have no time to do something.
tempus consumere in aliqua re to pass one's time in doing something.
tempus terere, conterere (in) aliqua re to waste time on something.
tempus conferre ad aliquum to devote one's time to anything.
tempus tribuere aliquui rei to employ one's time in...
tempus non amittere, perdere to lose no time.
nullum tempus intermittere, quin (also ab operae, or ad opus) to devote every spare moment to...; to work without intermission at a thing.
tempus ducere to spend time.
nullum tempus, in posterum differre to put off till another time; to postpone.
nihil mihi longius est or videtur quam dum or quam ut nothing is more tiresome to me than...
nihil mihi longius est quam (c. Inf.) to require, give, take time for deliberation.
tempus (spatium) deliberandi or ad deliberandum postulare, dare, sibi sumere to give some one a few days for reflection.
temporis servire,\(^{30}\) cedere to accommodate oneself to circumstances.
ex quo tempore or simply ex quo since the time that, since (at the beginning of a sentence).

\(^{29}\) praecipitare is also transitive, e.g. praecipitare aliquem, to hurl a person down; ruere always intransitive except in poetry.

\(^{30}\) The verb servire helps to form several phrases, e.g. servire valetudini, to be a valetudinarian; iracundiae, to be unable to restrain one's anger; brevitat, to be concise; communi utilitate, to be devoted to the public good, etc.
at the same moment that, precisely when.
occasions arise for...
circumstances demand.
it is high time that...
the present day.
in our time; in our days.
our generation has seen many victories.
in our fathers' time.
in the time of Pericles.
in old days, in the olden time.
in the time of the Republic.
the imperial epoch.
the middle ages.
Pericles, the greatest man of his day.
Pericles, the greatest man of his day.
Pericles, the greatest man of his day.
a man of considerable learning for those times.
in process of time.
at the first opportunity.
at this moment.
in an instant.
at the important moment.
just at the critical moment.
on the spur of the moment.
to be there at a given time.
for a short time.
for a short time.
after a fairly long interval.
after some time.
at present; for the moment.
for the future.
for ever.
more than once; repeatedly.
to foresee the future.
to foresee the far distant future.
to take no thought for the future.
the spirit of the times, the fashion.
his moribus according to the present custom, fashion.

9. Year—Seasons

praeterito anno (not praeterlapso)
superiore, priore anno
proximo anno
insequenti(e) anno (not sequente)
anno peracto, circumacto, interiecto, intermisso
anno vertente
initio anni, ineunte anno
exeunte, extremo anno
singulis annis, diebus
quinto quoque anno
ad annum
amplius sunt (quam) viginti anni or viginti annis
viginti anni et amplius, aut plus
abhinc (ante) viginti annos or viginti his annis
quinque anni sunt or sextus annus est, cum te non vidi
quinque annos or sextum (iam) annum abest
anno ab urbe condita quinto

commutationes temporum quadripartitae
verno, aestivo, auctumnali, hiberno tempore
ineunte, primo vere
ver appetit
suavitas verni temporis
summa aestate, hieme
hiems subest
hiemem tolerare
anni descriptio
annus (mensis, dies) intercalaris
fasti

in the past year.
last year.
(1) last year; (2) next year.
in the following year.
after a year has elapsed.
in the course of the year.
at the beginning of the year.
at the end of the year.
year by year; day by day.
every fifth year.
a year from now.
it is more than twenty years ago.
twenty years and more.
twenty years ago.
I have not seen you for five years.
he has been absent five years.
in the fifth year from the founding of the city.
the succession of the four seasons.
in spring, summer, autumn, winter time.
at the beginning of spring.
spring is approaching.
the charms of spring.
in the height of summer, depth of winter.
winter is at hand.
to bear the winter.
the division of the year (into months, etc.)
the intercalary year (month, day).
the calender (list of fasts and festivals).

10. Day—Divisions of the Day

ante lucem before daybreak.
prima luce at daybreak.
luce (luci) in full daylight.
ubi illuxit, luxit, diluxit when it was day.
lucet it is daylight.

The spirit of a thing is usually rendered by such words as natura, proprietas, ratio atque voluntas, e.g. the spirit, genius of a language, natura or proprietas sermonis; the spirit of the laws, voluntas et sententia legum.

Unless one is emphasised unus is left out with the following words: annus, mensis, dies, hora, and verbum.
diluculo in the morning twilight.
advesperascit evening is drawing on.
die, caelo vesperascente when it is growing dusk; towards evening.
multus dies or multa lux est the day is already far advanced.
ad multam noctem till late at night.
de nocte, de die late at night.
multa de nocte in the dead of night; at midnight.
tempestas, concubia nocte in the silence of the night.
silentio noctis the succession of day and night.
noctes diesque, noctes et dies, et dies et
noctes, dies noctesque, diem noctemque
intempestas, concubia nocte

tempus matutinum, meridianum,
vespertinum, nocturnum
the day is already far advanced.

tempora matutina the morning hours.
in dies (singulos)
in diem vivere to live from day to day.
alternis diebus every other day.
quattuor dies continui four successive days.
unus et alter dies one or two days.
dies unus, alter, plures intercesserant one, two, several days had passed,
intervened.
diem proferre (Att. 13. 14)
to adjourn, delay.
biduo serius two days late.
horā citius an hour too soon.
postridie qui fuit dies Non. Sept. (Nonarum September (Att. 4. 1. 5)
on the day after, which was September 5th.
hodie qui est dies Non. Sept.; cras qui dies to-day the 5th of September; tomorrow
futurus est Non. Sept.
dies hesternus, hodiernus, crastinus yesterday, to-day, tomorrow.
diem dicere colloquio to appoint a date for an interview.
ad diem constitutam at the appointed time.
diem videre, cum... to live to see the day when...
dies dolorem mitigabit time will assuage his grief.
quota hora est? what time is it?
tertia hora est it is the third hour ( = 9 A.M.)
ad horam compositam at the time agreed on.

III. Parts of the Human Body

omnibus artubus contremiscere to tremble in every limb.
aures claudere, patefacere (e.g. veritati, to turn a deaf ear to, to open one's ears to...
assentatoribus)
aures praebere alicui to listen to a person.
aures alicuius obtundere or simply obtundere to din a thing into a person's ears.
(aliquem)
in aurem alicui dicere (insusurrare) alicui to whisper something in a person's ears.
ad aures alicuius (not alicui) pervenire, to come to some one's ears.
accidere

36 Used absolutely "too late" = sero; if "too late for," "later than," always serius (quam).
aures erigere
oratio in aures influit
to prick up one's ears.
his words find an easy hearing, are listened to with pleasure.
a fine, practised ear.
aures elegantes, teretes, tritae (De Or. 9, 27)
neque auribus neque oculis satis consto
oratio in aures influit his words find an easy hearing, are listened to with pleasure.
caput aperire (opp. operire)
capite obvoluto
caput demittere
caput praecedere
caput 37 parieti impingere
a fine, practised ear.
sto I am losing my eyesight and getting deaf.
caput praecīdere to cut off a man's head.
caput praecīdere to cut off a man's head.
caput aperto (opp. operto)
capitum demittere to cut off a man's head.
caput aperire (opp. operire)
capite obvoluto
caput demittere
caput praecedere
caput 37 parieti impingere
cervices (in Cic. only in plur.) frangere alicui or alicuius
gladius cervicibus impendet
hostis 38 in cervicibus alicuius est
promittre crinem, barbam
passis crinibus
capilli horrent
capilli compi, compositi (opp. horridi)
frontem contrahere (opp. explicare)
frontem ferire, percutere
in fronte alicuius inscriptum est
ab alicuius latere non discedere
da late regis esse
manum (dextram) alicui porrigere
manum non vertere alicuius rei causa
manus incere, inferre, afferre alicui
manus tollere
manus dare
manu ducere alicuem
manu or in manu tenere alicuid
in manibus habere alicuid (also metaphorically)
de manu in manus or per manus tradere alicui
ex or de manibus alicui or alicuius
ex torquere alicuius
e manibus dimittere
in alicuius manus venire, pervenire

to break a person's neck.
a sword hangs over his neck.
the foe is at our heels, is upon us.
to grow one's hair, beard long.
with dishevelled hair.
his hair stands on end.
well-ordered, well-brushed hair.
to touch with the fingertips.
to frown.
to beat one's brow.
one can see it in his face.
to be always at a person's side.
to belong to the king's bodyguard.
to give one's hand to some one.
to make not the slightest effort; not to stir a finger.
to lay violent hands on a person.
to raise one's hands in astonishment.
to own oneself conquered, surrender.
to lead some one by the hand.
to hold something in one's hand.
to have something in one's hands, on hand.
to pass a thing from hand to hand.
to wrest from a person's hand.
to let go from one's hands.
to come into some one's hands.

37 caput has several metaphorical meanings, e.g. capita coniurationis (Liv. 9, 26), the leaders of the conspiracy; caput Graeciae, the capital of Greece; caput cenae, the chief dish; capita legis, the headings, clauses of a law; id quod caput est, the main point; de capite deducere (Liv. 6, 15), to subtract from the capital; capitās periculum, mortal peril; capitās deminiutio (maxima, media, minima) (Liv. 22, 60), deprivation of civil rights. caput is often combined with fons = source, origin, e.g. ille fons et caput Socrates (Cic. De Or. 1, 42); in aestu inest fons miseriae et caput (Cic.) By metonymy caput is used with liberum (and noxium) (Verr. 2, 32, 79) with the meaning of a free (guilty) person, individual.

38 Cf. velut in cervicibus habere hostem (Liv. 44, 39); bellum ingens in cervicibus est (Liv. 22, 33, 6).

39 Cf. ne digitum quidem porrigere alicuius rei causa.
in alicuius manus incidere
to fall unexpectedly into some one's hands.
in manus(m) sumere aliquid
to take something into one's hands.
in manibus aliquem gestare
to carry in one's arms.
e (de) manus effugere,
to slip, escape from the hands.
inter manus auferre aliquem
to carry some one away in one's arms.
compressis manibus sedere (proverb.) (Liv. 7. 13)
to sit with folded arms; to be inactive.
mordicus tenere aliquid
to hold fast in the teeth (also metaphorically, obstinately).
oculos concere in aliquem
to turn one's gaze on; to regard.
oculos circumferre
to look in every direction.
oomnia oculos (et ora) ad se convertere
to draw every one's eyes upon one.
oomnia animos or mentes in se convertere
to attract universal attention.
conspici, conspicuum esse aliqua re
to make oneself conspicuous.
oculos (aures, animum) advertere ad aliquid
to turn one's eyes (ears, attention) towards an object.
oculi in vultu alicuius habitant
his eyes are always fixed on some one's face.
oculos figere in terra and in terram
to keep one's eyes on the ground.
oculos pascere aliqua re (also simply pasci aliqua re)
to feast one's eyes with the sight of...
oculos deicere, removere ab aliqua re
to turn one's gaze away from an object.
oculos operire (moriensi)
to close the eyes of a dying person.
oculus aciem alicui praestringere (also simply praestringere)
to dazzle a person.
oculi in vultu alicuius habitant
to lose one's sight.
oculi privare aliquem
to deprive a person of his eyes.
luminibus orbare aliquem
to deprive a person of his eyes.
oculis captum esse (vid. sect. IV. 6., note auribus, oculis...)
to be blind.
ante oculos aliquem versatur
something presents itself to my vision.
oculis, ante oculos (animo) proponere aliquid
to picture a thing to oneself; to imagine.
ante oculos vestros (not vobis) res gestas proponite
picture to yourselves the circumstances.
cernere et videre aliquid
to see clearly, distinctly.
oculis mentis videre aliquid
to see with the mind's eye.
in oculis aliquem ferre
to cherish as the apple of one's eye.
alicis est mihi in oculis
to cherish as the apple of one's eye.
abire ex oculis, e conspectu alicuius
to go out of sight, disappear.

\footnote{Notice too liberos de parentum complexu avellere (Verr. 2. 1. 3. 7), to snatch children from their parents' "arms" (not brachium), so in alicuius complexu mori; in alicuius complexu haerere. medium aliquem amplecti, to take to one's arms, embrace; libentissimo animo accipere, to welcome with open arms.}

\footnote{Distinguish effugere aliquid, to escape the touch of, e.g. invidiam, mortem; and effugere ex aliqua re, to escape from a position one is already in, e.g. e carcere, e caede, e praelio. Notice fugit me, it escapes my notice.}

\footnote{animadvertere aliquid = animadvertere aliquum = to notice a thing; animadvertere in aliquem = to punish a person.}

\footnote{To shut one's eyes to a thing, conivere in aliqua re.}

\footnote{Cf. caecatus, occaecatus cupiditate, stultitia.
venire in conspectum alicuius
to come in sight.
se in conspectum dare alicui
to show oneself to some one.
fugere alicuius conspectum, aspectum
to keep out of a person's sight.
in conspectu omnium or omnibus
before every one, in the sight of the world.
inspectantibus
to take in everything at a glance.
on apparere
not to appear.
pedibus obterere, conculcare
to trample under foot.
ad pedes alicuius accidere
to fall at some one's feet.
ad pedes alicuius se proicere, se abicere,
procumbere, se prosterne
to throw oneself at some one's feet.
ad pedes alicuius iacēre, stratum esse
(strium iacēre)
to prostrate oneself before a person.
quod ante pedes est or positum est, non
videre
to fail to see what lies before one.
sanguine manare, redundare
to drip blood; to be deluged with blood.
vultum fingere
to dissemble, disguise one's feelings.
vultus ficti simulatique
a feigned expression.
vultum componere ad severitatem
to put on a stern air.
vultum non mutare
to keep one's countenance, remain impassive.

IV. Properties of the Human Body

1. Feelings—Sensations—Powers

sensus sani, integri, incorrupti
sound, unimpaired senses.
sensibus praeditum esse
to be endowed with sense.
sensibus carere
not to possess the sense of hearing.
sensu audiendi carere
not to possess the sense of hearing.
sensibus sub sensum or sub oculos, sub aspectum
to come within the sphere of the senses.
cadere
sensibus or sub sensus subiectum esse
the world of sense, the visible world.
sensibus percipi
the world of sense, the visible world.
res sensibus or oculis subiectae (De Fin. 5.
12. 36)
the world of sense, the visible world.
res quas oculis cernimus
the world of sense, the visible world.
res externae
the world of sense, the visible world.
sensus movere (more strongly pellere)
to make an impression on the senses.
aliquid sensus suaviter afficit
a thing makes a pleasant impression on the senses.
aliquid sensus iucunditate perfundit
a thing makes a pleasant impression on the senses.
pulsu externo, adventicio agitari
to be affected by some external impulse, by external impressions.
sevocare mentem a sensibus (De Nat. D. 3.
8. 21)
to free one's mind from the influences of the senses.
aliquid a sensibus meis abhorret
something offends my instincts, goes against the grain.
vires corporis or merely vires
bodily strength.
vires colligere
to gain strength.
vires aliquem deficiunt
dum vires suppetunt
bonis esse viribus
pro viribus or pro mea parte
pro virili parte (cf. sect. V. 22.)

to lose strength.
as long as one's strength holds out.
to be robust, vigorous.
as well as I can; to the best of my ability.
as well as I can; to the best of my ability.

2. Birth—Life

in luce edi
ei, propter quos hanc lucem aspeximus
tollere or suscipere liberos

aliquem in liberorum loco habere
sexus (not genus) virilis, muliebris
patre, (e) matre natus

Cato Uticensis ortus erat a Catone Censorio

originem ab aliquo trahere, ducere
Romae natus, (a) Roma oriundus
cuias es

natione, genere Anglus

ortus ab Anglis or oriundus ex Anglis
urbs patria or simply patria

animam, spiritum ducere
aera spiritu ducere

animam continere
cursu exanimari (B.G. 2. 23. 1)
spiritum intercludere alicui

in vita esse

vita or hac luce frui
vitam beatatam (miseram) degere
vitam, aetatem (omnem aetatem, omne aetatis tempus) agere (honeste, ruri, in litteris), degere, traducere
dum vita suppetit; dum (quoad) vivo
si vita mihi suppetitat or
si vita suppetit

quod reliquum est vitae

vitae cursum or curriculum

Homerus fuit.

Homer lived many years before the foundation of Rome.

---

pro virili parte is distinct from the other expressions, as implying more assurance and confidence on the part of the speaker.

It was the custom for a Roman father to lift up his new-born child, which was laid on the ground at his feet; hence the expression tollere, suscipere.

suppetitare (1) transitive, to supply sufficiently; (2) intrans. to be present in sufficient quantities = suppetere.

vitae (vivendi) cursus or curriculum = life, career—considering its duration, length. Life = biography is not curriculum vitae, but simply vita, vitae descriptio.
3. Time of Life

(The terms for the different ages of man are infans, puer, adulescens, iuvenis, senior, senex, grandis natu.)

ea aetate, id aetatis esse
to be of such and such an age.
a puero (is), a parvo (is), a parvulo (is)
from youth up.
a teneris unguiculis (ἐξ ἀπαλων ὁνύχων)
from one's cradle, from one's earliest childhood.

(ab ineunte (prima) aetate (De Or. 1. 21. 97)
from one's entry into civil life.
ex pueris excedere
to leave one's boyhood behind one, become a man.

Flo aetatis
the prime of youthful vigour.
aetate floreat, vigere
to be in the prime of life.

Integra aetate esse
be in the prime of life.

Adulescentia deferbuit
the fires of youth have cooled.
aetate progrediente
with advancing years.
aetate ingravescente
with the weight, weakness of declining years.

Aetas constans, media, firmata, corroborata
manhood.
(aetatis no virilis)

Grandior factus
having reached man's estate.
corroborata, firmata aetate
having reached man's estate.
sui iuris factum esse
to have become independent, be no longer a minor.

Aetate provectum esse (not aetate provecta)
to be advanced in years.
Longius aetate provectum esse
to be more advanced in years.

Grandis natu
aged.
aetate affecta esse
to be infirm through old age.

Vires consenescunt
to become old and feeble.

Senectute, senio confectum esse
to be worn out by old age.

Exacta aetate mori
to die at a good old age.

Ad summam senectutem pervenire

Senectus nobis obrēpit
old age creeps on us insensibly.

Admodum adulescens, senex
still quote a young (old) man.

Extrema aetas
the last stage of life, one's last days.

Extremum tempus aetatis
the last stage of life, one's last days.

Vita occidens
the evening of life.

Aequalem esse alicuius

Maior (natu)
to be a contemporary of a person.

Aetate alicui antecedere, anteire
the elder

Quot annos natus es?
how old are you?

Qua aetate es?
how old are you?

Tredecim annos natus sum
I am thirteen years old.

Tertium decimum annum ago
I am in my thirteenth year.

Puer decem annorum
a boy ten years old.

Decimum aetatis annum ingredi
to be entering on one's tenth year.

49 To live, speaking chronologically, is esse, vivere denotes to be alive, pass one's life, e.g. laute, in otio.
decem annos vixisse to be ten years old.
deicum annum excessisse, egressum esse to be more than ten years old, to have entered on one's eleventh year.

minorem esse viginti annis to be not yet twenty.
tum habebam decem annos to reach one's hundredth year, to live to be a hundred.
centum annos compleire to reach one's hundredth year, to live to be a hundred.

vitam ad annum centesimum perducere the addition of a few years.
accessio paucorum annorum to be middle-aged (i.e. between thirty and forty).
tertiam iam aetatem videre to happen during a person's life, year of office.
in aetatem alicuius, in annum incidere to outlive, survive all one's kin.

omnia suorum or omnibus suis superstitem esse our contemporaries; men of our time.
homines qui nunc sunt (opp. qui tunc fuerunt) our contemporaries; men of our time.
homines huius aetatis, nostrae memoriae posteri posterity.
scriptores aetate posteriores or inferiores later writers.

4. Hunger—Thirst

esurire to be hungry.
fame laborare, premi to be tormented by hunger, to be starving.
famem tolerare, sustentare to endure the pangs of hunger.
inedia mori or vitam finire to starve oneself to death.
fame confici, perire, interire to die of starvation.
fame necari to be starved to death (as punishment).
famem, sitim explere to allay one's hunger, thirst.
famem sitimque depellere cibo et potione to allay one's hunger, thirst.
siti cruciari, premi to suffer agonies of thirst.
sitim colligere to become thirsty.
sitim haustu gelidae aquae sedare to slake one's thirst by a draught of cold water.
famis et sitis patientem esse to be able to endure hunger and thirst.

5. Laughter—Tears

risum edere, tollere to begin to laugh.
cachinnum tollere, edere to burst into a roar of laughter.
risum movere, concitare to raise a laugh.
risum elicere (more strongly excutere) alicui to make a person laugh.

50 sitis is also used metaphorically—e.g. libertatis sitis (Rep. 1. 43. 66), so sitire—e.g. honores (De Fin. 4. 5. 3), libertatem (Rep. 1. 43. 66), sanguinem (Phil. 2. 7. 20). The participle sitiens takes the Gen.—e.g. sitiens virtutis (Planc. 5. 13).

51 Not in risum erumpere, which only occurs in late Latin. However, risus, vox, fletus erumpit is classical, similarly indignatio (Liv. 4. 50), furor, cupiditates (Cael. 12. 28).
risum captare to try and raise a laugh.
risum tenere vix posse to be scarcely able to restrain one's laughter.
risum aegre continere posse to be scarcely able to restrain one's laughter.
aliquid in risum vertere to make a thing ridiculous, turn it into a joke.
lacrimas, vim lacrimarum effundere, to burst into a flood of tears.
profundere
in lacrimas effundiri or lacrimis perfundi to be bathed in tears.
lacrimis obortis with tears in one's eyes.
multis cum lacrimis with many tears.
magnus cum fletu with many tears.
lacrimas tenere non posse to be hardly able to restrain one's tears.
fletum cohibere non posse to be hardly able to restrain one's tears.
vix mihi tempero quin lacrimem to be hardly able to restrain one's tears.
vix me contineo quin lacrimem to be hardly able to restrain one's tears.
lacrimas or fletum alicui movere to move to tears.
praecipue lacrimalis to weep for joy.
hinc illae lacrimae (proverb.) (Ter. And. 1. 1. 99; Cael. 25. 61) hence these tears; there's the rub.
lacrimula (Planc. 31. 76) crocodiles' tears.
lacrimae simulatae crocodiles' tears.

6. Health—Sickness

bona (firma, prospera) valetudine esse or uti (vid. sect. VI. 8., note uti...)
valetudini consulere, operam dare to enjoy good health.
firmav etor constitutio or affectio to take care of one's health.
in morbum incidunt a good constitution.
aegrotare coepit to be ill, weakly.
in morbo tentari or corripi he fell ill.
morbo affligi he fell ill.
leeto teneri to be attacked by disease.
vehementer, graviter aegrotare, iacere to be laid on a bed of sickness.
gravi morbo affectum esse, conflictari, vexari to be seriously ill.
leviter aegrotare, minus valere to be seriously ill.
aestu et febri iactari to be indisposed.
onebus membris captum esse to have a severe attack of fever.
omnia membris captum esse to be affected by disease in every limb; to be paralysed.
ex pedibus laborare, pedibus aegrum esse to have the gout.
pestilentia (not pestis) in urbem (populum) invadit to be affected by disease in every limb; to be paralysed.
animus relinquit aliquem the plague breaks out in the city.
morbuse ingravescit a man loses his senses, becomes unconscious.
the disease gets worse.

---

52 valetudo is a neutral term = state of health. sanitas = soundness of mind, reason—e.g. ad sanitatem reverti, to recover one's reason.
53 Note auribus, oculis, captum esse, to be deaf, blind; mente captum esse, to be mad.
morbo absūmi (Sall. Iug. 5. 6) to be carried off by a disease.
assidēre aegroto (Liv. 25. 26) to watch by a sick man's bedside.
aegrotum curare to treat as a patient (used of a doctor).
aegrotum sanare (not curare) to cure a patient.
ex morbo convalescere (not reconvalescere) to recover from a disease.
e gravi morbo recreari or se colligere to recruit oneself after a severe illness.
he feels better.
valetudinem (morbum) excusare (Liv. 6. 22. 7) to excuse oneself on the score of health.
valetudinis excusatione uti

cubitum ire to go to bed.
somno or quieti se tradere to lay oneself down to sleep
to be unable to sleep.
I cannot sleep for anxiety.
somnum capere non posse to sleep soundly (from fatigue).
arte, graviter dormire (ex lassitudine) to sleep soundly (from fatigue).
artus somnus aliquem complectitur (Rep. 6. 10) to fall fast asleep.
somno captum, oppressum esse to be overcome by sleep.
sopitum esse to be sound asleep.
in lucem dormire to sleep on into the morning.
somno solvi to awake.
per somnum, in somnis to rouse, wake some one.
in somnis videre aliquid or speciem to see something in a dream.
in somnis visus (mihi) sum videre I dreamed I saw...
species mihi dormienti oblata est I saw a vision in my dreams.
somnium verum evīdit (Div. 2. 53. 108) my dream is coming true.
somnium interpretari to explain a dream.
somniari de aliquo to dream of a person.

8. Death

(de) vita decedere or merely decedere to depart this life.
(ex) vita excedere, ex vita abire to depart this life.
de vita exire, de (ex) vita migrare to depart this life.
mortem (diem supremum) obire to depart this life.

---

54 The comparative and superlative of aeger and aegrotus are not used in this connection, they are replaced by such phrases as vehementer, graviter aegrotare, morbus ingravescit, etc.

55 But se excusare alicui or apud aliquem (de or in aliqua re) = to excuse oneself to some one about a thing.
supremo vitae die
animam edere or efflare
extremum vitae spiritum edere
animam agere
mors immatura or praematura
mature decedere
subita morte extingui
necessaria (opp. voluntaria) morte mori
morbo perire, absūmi, consūmi
debitum naturae reddere (Nep. Reg. 1)
mortem sibi consciscere (Nep. Eum. 13)
se vita privare
manus, vim sibi afferre
vitae finem facere
talem vitae exitum (not finem) habuit (Nep. Eum. 13)
mortem oppetere
mortem occumbere pro patria
sanguinem suum pro patria effundere or profundere
vitam profundere pro patria
se morti offerre pro salute patriae
dare venenum in pane
venenum sumere, bibere
veneno sibi mortem consciscere
poculum mortis (mortiferum) exhaurire (Cluent. 11. 31)
potestas vitae necisque
plagam extremam or mortiferam infligere
e or de medio tollere
peril! actum est de me! (Ter. Ad. 3. 2. 26)
on one's last day.
to give up the ghost.
to give up the ghost.
to be at one's last gasp.
an untimely death.
to die young.
to be cut off by sudden death.
to die a natural death.
to die a natural death.
to die a natural death.
to commit suicide.
to take one's own life.
to lay hands on oneself.
to put an end to one's life.
such was the end of... (used of a violent death).
to meet death (by violence).
to die for one's country.
to shed one's blood for one's fatherland.
to sacrifice oneself for one's country.
to sacrifice oneself for one's country.
to give a person poison in bread.
to take poison.
to poison oneself.
to drain the cup of poison.
power over life and death.
to inflict a death-blow.
to remove a person.
I'm undone! it's all up with me!

9. Burial

funere efferri or simply efferri (publice; publico, suo sumptu)
sepultura aliquem afficere
iusta facere, solvere alicui
supremo officio in aliquem fungi
funus alicui facere, ducere (Cluent. 9. 28)
funus alicuius exsequi exsequias alicuius funeris prosequii
supremis officis aliquem prosequii (vid sect. VI. 11., note Prosequi...)
mortuum in sepulcro condere
to be interred (at the expense of the state, at one's own cost).
to bury a person.
to perform the last rites for a person.
to perform the last rites for a person.
to carry out the funeral obsequies.
to attend a person's funeral.
to attend a person's funeral.
to perform the last offices of affection.
to entomb a dead body.

56 sua morte defungi or mori is late Latin, cf. Inscr. Orell. 3453, debitum naturae persolvit.
57 se interficere, se occidere, se necare are rare. During the classic period, when suicide was not common, ipse is often added—e.g. Crassum se ipsum interemisse (Cic. Scaur. 2. 16), Lucretia se ipsa interemit (Fin. 2. 20. 66); but later, when suicide had become frequent, se interemit; nonnulli semet interemerunt (Suet. Iul. 89), etc., occur commonly.
V. Human Life; its various Relations and Conditions

1. Circumstance—Situation—Difficulty

res humanae or simply res
haec est rerum humanarum condicio
sic vita hominum est
ita (ea lege, ea condicione) nati sumus

res externas or humanas despicere
res humanas infra se positas arbitri
meliore (deteriore) condicione esse, uti

condicio ac fortuna hominum infimi generis
res meae meliore loco, in meliore causa sunt
meliorem in statum redigor

aliquem in antiquum statum, in pristinum restituiere

in tanta rerum (temporum) iniquitate
res dubiae, perditae, afflictae
in angustias adducere aliquem

in angustiis, difficultatibus, esse or versari
angustiis premi, difficultatibus affici
agitur praecclare, bene cum aliquo

res ita est, ita (sic) se habet
eadem (longe alia) est huius rei ratio
hoc longe aliter, secus est

human life.
that is the way of the world; such is life.
that is the way of the world; such is life.
this is our natural tendency, our destiny;
nature compels us.
to despise earthly things.
to feel superior to the affairs of life.
to find one’s circumstances altered for the better (the worse).
the position of the lower classes.
my position is considerably improved; my prospects are brighter.
my position is considerably improved; my prospects are brighter.
to restore a man to his former position.
under such unfavourable circumstances.
a critical position; a hopeless state of affairs.
to place some one in an embarrassing position.
to be in a dilemma; in difficulties.
to be in a dilemma; in difficulties.
so-and-so is in a very satisfactory position; prospers.
the facts are these; the matter stands thus.
the case is exactly similar (entirely different).
this is quite another matter.

58 "Corpse" usually = corpus mortui or simply corpus. cadaver is a corpse which has begun to decompose.
59 For eulogy, panegyric, use laudatio funebris or simply laudatio, cf. Mil. 13. 33; Liv. 5. 50.
circumstances make this necessary; the exigencies of the case are these. according to circumstances.
the matter has gone so far that...; the state of affairs is such that...
how are you getting on?
my circumstances have not altered.

if anything should happen to me; if I die.

under such circumstances.

whatever happens; in any case.

2. Commencement—End—Result

initium capere; incipere ab aliqua re to begin with a thing.
initium facere, ducere, sumere (alicuius rei) to commence a thing.
ab exiguis initiis proficisci to start from small beginnings.
parare with Inf. to prepare to do a thing.
aggredi ad aliquid faciendum to prepare to do a thing.
incunabula the origin, first beginnings of learning.
finem facere alicuius rei to finish, complete, fulfil, accomplish a thing.
finem imponere, afferre, constituere alicui rei to finish, complete, fulfil, accomplish a thing.
ad finem aliquid adducere to finish, complete, fulfil, accomplish a thing.
ad exitum aliquid perducere to finish, complete, fulfil, accomplish a thing.
finem habere to come to an end.
aliquid (bene, prospere) succedit or procedit the matter progresses favourably, succeeds.
(ad parum procedere, non succedere)
eventum, exitum (felicem) habere to turn out (well); to result (satisfactorily).

quorsum haec res cadet or evadet? the matter? to frustrate, nullify.
to what will be the issue, end, consequence of the matter?
what will become of him?
what am I to do with this fellow?

3. Cause—Motive—Origin

causam afferre to quote as a reason; give as excuse.
iustis de for valid reasons.
magnae (graves) necessariae causae cogent, decisive reasons.
non sine causa on good grounds; reasonably.

quid causae fuit cur...? how came it that...?
causa posita est in aliqua re the motive, cause, is to be found in...
causa repetenda est ab aliqua re (not quaerenda)
multae causae me impulerunt ad aliquid or ut...
causam interponere or interserere
praetendere, praetexere aliquid causam idoneam nancisci
per causam (with Gen.)
causae rationem habere alicuius rei
respicere aliquid
quo in genere
multis rebus or locis
in utroque re
ceteris rebus (not cetera)
omni ex parte; in omni genere; omnibus rebus
aliqua ex parte
aliquatenus
magni (nullius) momenti esse
momentum afferre ad aliquid
pertinere ad aliquid
hoc nihil ad sapientem pertinet
hoc in sapientem non cadit
multum valere ad aliquid
multum afferre ad aliquid
magnam vim habere ad aliquid
positum, situm esse in aliqua re

the motive, cause, is to be found in...
I was induced by several considerations to...
to interpose, put forward an argument, a reason.
to make something an excuse, pretext.
to find a suitable pretext.
under the pretext, pretence of...
cause and effect.
extraneous causes.
concatenation, interdependence of causes.
important results are often produced by trivial causes.
to originate in, arise from.
to originate in, arise from.
to accrue in great abundance.
untold advantages arise from a thing.
to draw from the fountain-head.
these things have the same origin.
source, origin.

4. Regard—Importance—Influence—Power—Inclination

rationem habere alicuius rei
respicere aliquid
quo in genere
multis rebus or locis
in utroque re
ceteris rebus (not cetera)
omni ex parte; in omni genere; omnibus rebus
aliqua ex parte
aliquatenus
magni (nullius) momenti esse
momentum afferre ad aliquid
pertinere ad aliquid
hoc nihil ad sapientem pertinet
hoc in sapientem non cadit
multum valere ad aliquid
multum afferre ad aliquid
magnam vim habere ad aliquid
positum, situm esse in aliqua re

to have regard for; take into consideration.
to have regard for; take into consideration.
from this point of view; similarly.
in many respects; in many points.
in both cases; whichever way you look at it.
as regards the rest; otherwise.
from every point of view; looked at in every light.
to a certain extent.
to a certain extent.
to be of great (no) importance.
to determine the issue of; to turn the scale.
to be essentially important to a thing.
a wise man is in no way affected by this.
it is incompatible with the nature of a wise man; the wise are superior to such things.
to contribute much towards...; to affect considerably; to be instrumental in...
to contribute much towards...; to affect considerably; to be instrumental in...
to have considerable influence on a question.
to depend upon a thing.

62 But respicere ad aliquid (aliquem) = to look round at an object.
to depend upon a thing.
to be composed of; to consist of.
it is evident from...
to be in a person’s power.
to be in a person’s power.
the matter is still undecided; it is an open question.
I have not yet committed myself.
it is no longer in my power.
to leave the question open; to refuse to commit oneself.
the decision of the question rests with you.
to put the matter entirely in some one’s hands.
to put the matter entirely in some one’s hands.
just as you wish.

5. Opportunity—Possibility—Occasion—Chance

occasio datur, offertur
occasione data, oblata
per occasionem
quotienscunque occasio oblata est; omnibus locis
occasionem alicui dare, praebere alicuius rei
or ad alicuius faciendum
facultatem alicui dare alicuius rei or ut possit...
potestatem, copiam alicui dare, facere
with Gen. gerund.
occasionem nancisci
occasione uti
occasionem praetermittere, amittere
(amidst carelessnes), omittere
(deliberately), dimittere

a favourable opportunity presents itself.
when occasion offers; as opportunity occurs.
when occasion offers; as opportunity occurs.
on every occasion; at every opportunity.
to give a man the opportunity of doing a thing.
to give a man the opportunity of doing a thing.
to give a man the opportunity of doing a thing.
to get, meet with, a favourable opportunity.
to make use of, avail oneself of an opportunity.
to lose, let slip an opportunity.

63 contineri aliqua re also means (1) to be bounded by..., e.g. oceano; (2) to be limited, restricted to, e.g. moenibus.
64 The proper meaning of integer (in-TAG, tango) is untouched, unsullied.
65 Not occasio opportuna, bona, pulchra, the notion "favourable" being contained in the word itself. We find, however, occasio praeclara, ampla, tanta, not unfrequently.
66 Notice potestatem alicui pugnandi facere, to offer battle, and potestatem sui facere alicui, (1) to give opportunity of battle, and also (2) to grant an audience to (cf. sui conveniendi potestatem facere).
indifference)
occasioni deesse  
occasionem arripere  
facultatem, potestatem alicui eripere, adimere  
nulla est facultas alicuius rei  
locum dare suspicioni  
ansas dare ad reprehendum, reprehensionis  
ansam habere reprehensionis  
adduci aliqua re (ad aliquid or ut...)  
nescio quo casu (with Indic.)  
temere et fortuito; forte (et) temere  

6. Success—Good Fortune

fortuna secunda uti  
fortunae favore or prospero flatu fortunae uti (vid. sect. VI. 8., note uti...)  
fortunam faurtricem nancisi  
fortuna caecos homines efficit, animos ocaecat  
fortunam tentare, experiri  
fortunam pericilari (periculum facere)  
fortunae se committere  
fortunam in manibus habere  
fortunam ex manibus dimittere  
fortuna commutatur, se inclinat  
ludibrium fortunae  
is, quem fortuna complexa est  
a fortuna deserturn, derelictum esse  
fortuna aliquem effert  
rebus secundis efferti  
ad felicitatem (magnus) cumulus accedit ex aliqua re  
alisquid felicitatis cumulum affert  
aliquid felicitatem magno cumulo auget  
in rebus prosperis et ad voluntatem fluentibus

67 In the same way deesse officio, to leave one's duties undone; d. muneri, to neglect the claims of one's vocation; d. rei publicae, to be careless of state interests, to be unpatriotic; d. sibi, not to do one's best.
beata vita, beate vivere, beatum esse 68
ad bene beateque vivendum
peropportune accidit, quod

happiness, bliss.
for a life of perfect happiness.
it is most fortunate that...

7. Misfortune—Fate—Ruin

fortuna adversa
res adversae, afflctae, perditae
in calamitatem incidere
calamitatem accipere, subire
nihii calamitatis (in vita) videre
calamitatem haurire
omnia labores exanclare
calamatatem, pestem inferre alicui
calamitatus affligi
calamitatus obri
 calamitatibus defungi
calamitate doctus
conflictari (cum) adversa fortuna
in malis iacere
malis urgeri
fortunae vicissitudines
ancipites et vari casus
sub varios incertosque casus subiectum esse

ad omnes casus subsidia comparare
varia fortuna uti

multis iniquitatusibus exerceri 70
fortunae tellis propositum esse
fortunae obiectum esse
ad iniurias fortunae expositum esse
fortunae cedere
aliquem affligere, perdere, pessumdare, in
praecips dare
praecipitem agi, ire
ad exitium vocari

misfortune, adversity.
to be overtaken by calamity.
to suffer mishap.
to live a life free from all misfortune.
to drain the cup of sorrow.
to drain the cup of sorrow.
to bring mishap, ruin on a person.
to be the victim of misfortune.
to be overwhelmed with misfortune.
to come to the end of one's troubles.
schooled by adversity.
to struggle with adversity.
to be broken down by misfortune.
to be hard pressed by misfortune.
to have the vicissitudes of fortune.
to have to submit to the uncertainties of
fortune; to be subject to Fortune's caprice.
to experience the ups and downs of life.
to be prepared for all that may come.
to experience the vicissitudes of fortune; to
to have a chequered career.
to be severely tried by misfortune.
to be exposed to the assaults of fate.
to be abandoned to fate.
to be a victim of the malice of Fortune.
to acquiesce in one's fate.
to bring a man to ruin; to destroy.
to be ruined, undone.
to be ruined, undone.

68 beatitas and beatitudo are used by Cicero in one passage only (De Nat. Deorum, 1. 34. 95), but
merely as a linguistic experiment.

69 In Latin metaphor the verb only, as a rule, is sufficient to express the metaphorical meaning—e.g.
amicitiam iungere cum aliquo , to be bound by the bands of affection to any one; religionem
labefactare, to undermine the very foundations of belief; bellum exstinguere, to extinguish the torch
of war; cuncta bello ardent , the fires of war are raging all around; libido consedit, the storm of
passion has ceased; animum pellere, to strike the heart-strings; vetustas monumenta exederat, the
tooth of time had eaten away the monuments.

70 The first meaning of exercere is to keep in motion, give no rest to. Then, metaphorically, to keep
busy, to harass—e.g. fortuna aliquem vehementer exercet. Lastly, exercere is used to express the
main activity in any branch of industry, thus, exercere agros, to farm; metalla, to carry on a mining
industry; naven, to fit out ships, be a shipowner; vectigalia, to levy, collect taxes, used specially of
the publicani, qui exercet iudicium, the presiding judge (praetor).
**ad interitum ruere**

_to be ruined, undone._

**in perniciem incurrere**

_to be ruined, undone._

**pestem alicui (in alicuam) machinari**

_to compass, devise a man's overthrow, ruin._

**perniciem (exitium) alicui affere, moliri, parare**

_to compass, devise a man's overthrow, ruin._

**ab exitio, ab interitu alicuiu vindicare**

_to rescue from destruction._

### 8. Danger—Risk—Safety

**in periculo esse or versari**

_to be in danger._

**res in summo discrimine versatur**

_the position is very critical._

**in vitae discrimine versari**

_to be in peril of one's life._

**in pericula incidere, incurrere**

_to find oneself in a hazardous position._

**pericula alicui impendent, imminent**

_many dangers threaten a man._

**pericula in or ad alicuam redundunt**

_to incur danger, risk._

**periculis se offerre**

_to expose oneself to peril._

**salutem, vitam suam in discrimen offerre (not exponere)**

_a man's life is at stake, is in very great danger._

**alicui, alicuam in periculum (discrimen) adducere, vocare**

_to endanger, imperil a person or thing._

**alicui periculum creare, conflare**

_to endanger, imperil a person or thing._

**in periculum capitis, in discrimen vitae se inferre**

_to recklessly hazard one's life._

**salus, caput, vita alicuius agitur, periclitatur, in discrimine est or versatur**

_at the critical moment._

**in ipso periculi discrimine**

_to rescue from peril._

**alicuius ex periculo eripere, servare**

_to try one's strength with the enemy; to try issue of battle._

**nullum periculum recusare pro**

_to avoid no risk in order to..._**  

**periculis perfungi**

_to surmount dangers._

**periculum facere alicuius rei**

_to make trial of; to risk._

**periculum hostis facere**

_to try one's strength with the enemy; to try issue of battle._

**res ad extremum casum perducta est**

_affairs are desperate; we are reduced to extremeties._

**ad extrema perventum est**

_affairs are desperate; we are reduced to extremeties._

**in tuto esse**

_to be in a position of safety._

**in tuto collocare alicuam**

_to ensure the safety of a thing._

### 9. Assistance—Deliverance—Consolation

**auxilium, opem, salutem ferre alicui**

_to bring aid to; to rescue._

**auxilio alicui venire**

_to come to assist any one._

**alicuius opem implorare**

_to implore a person's help._

---

71 _vocare_ helps to form several phrases—e.g. _in invidiam, in suspicione, in dubium, ad exitium, in periculum vocare._ It is used in the passive to express periphrastically the passive of verbs which have only an active voice—e.g. _in invidiam vocari_, to become unpopular, be hated, _invideor_ not being used. Cf. _in invidiam venire._
confugere ad aliquem or ad opem, ad fidem alicuius
ad extremum auxilium descendere
auxilium praesens
adesse alicui or alicuius rebus (opp. deesse)
salutem alicui afferre
saluti suae consulere, prospicere
suis rebus or sibi consulere
salutem expedire
solacium praebere
nihil habere consolationis
hoc solacio frui, uti
consolari aliquem de aliqua re
consolari dolorem alicuius
consolari aliquem in miseriis
hoc (illo) solacio me consolam
haec (illa) res me consolat

10. Riches—Want—Poverty

divitiis, copiis abundare
magnas opes habere
opibus maxime florere
omnibus opibus circumfluere
fortunis maximis ornatum esse
in omnium rerum abundantia vivere
aliquem ex paupere divitem facere
inopia alicuius rei laborare, premi
ad egestatem, ad inopiam (summam
omnium rerum) redigi
vitam inopem sustentare, tolerare
in egestate esse, versari
vitam in egestate degere
in summa egestate or mendicitate esse
stipem collectere
stipem (pecuniam) conferre
to fly to some one for refuge.
to be reduced to one's last resource.
prompt assistance.
to assist, stand by a person.
to deliver, rescue a person.
to take measures for one's safety; to look after one's own interests.
to take measures for one's safety; to look after one's own interests.
to effect a person's deliverance.
to comfort.
to afford no consolation.
to solace oneself with the thought...
to comfort a man in a matter; to condole with him.
to soothe grief.
to comfort in misfortune.
to be rich, wealthy.
to be very rich; to be in a position of affluence.
to be very rich; to be in a position of affluence.
to be very rich; to be in a position of affluence.
to be in the enjoyment of a large fortune.
to live in great affluence.
to raise a man from poverty to wealth.
to suffer from want of a thing.
to be reduced to (abject) poverty.
to earn a precarious livelihood.
to live in poverty, destitution.
to live in poverty, destitution.
to be entirely destitute; to be a beggar.
to beg alms.
to contribute alms.

72 Similarly descendere is frequently used of consent ing unwillingly to a thing, condescending. Cf. vi. 9
ad fin. and xvi. 9.
73 Notice too poena praesens, instant punishment; pecunia praesens, ready money; medicina praesens, efficacious remedy; deus praesens, a propitious deity; in rem praesentem venire, to go to
the very spot to make a closer examination.
11. Utility—Advantage—Harm—Disadvantage

usui or ex usu esse
utilitatem afferre, praebere
multum ( nihil) ad communem utilitatem afferre
aliquid in usum suum conferre
omnia ad suam utilitatem referre
rationibus alicuius prospicere or consulere (opp. officere, obstare, adversari)
commodis alicuius servire
commoda alicuius tueri
meae rationes ita tulerunt
fructum (uberrimum) capere, percipere, consequi ex aliqua re
fructus ex hac re redundat in or ad me
aliquid ad meum fructum redundat quid attinet? with Infin.
cui bono?
damnum (opp. lucrum) facere
damno affili
detrimentum capere, accipere, facere
iacturam alicuius rei facere
damnum inferre, afferre alicui
damnum ferre
incommodo afficere aliquem
incommodis mederi
damnum or detrimentum sarcire (not reparare)
damnum compensare cum aliqua re
res repetere
res restituere
to be of use.
to be serviceable.
to considerably (in no way) further the common good.
to employ in the furtherance of one's interests.
to consider one's own advantage in everything.
to look after, guard a person's interests, welfare.
to look after, guard a person's interests, welfare.
to look after, guard a person's interests, welfare.
my interests demanded it.
to derive (great) profit, advantage from a thing.
(great) advantage accrues to me from this.
I am benefited by a thing.
what is the use of?
who gets the advantage from this? who is the interested party?
to suffer loss, harm, damage.
to suffer loss, harm, damage.
to suffer loss, harm, damage.
to throw away, sacrifice.
to do harm to, injure any one.
to know how to endure calamity.
to inconvenience, injure a person.
to relieve a difficulty.
to make good, repair a loss or injury.
to balance a loss by anything.
to demand restitution, satisfaction.
to give restitution, satisfaction.

12. Goodwill—Kindness—Inclination—Favour

Also fructum alicuius rei capere, percipere, ferre, consequi ex aliqua re—e.g. virtutis fructus ex re publica (magnos, laetos, uberes) capere = to be handsomely rewarded by the state for one's high character.

Notice too calamitatem, cladem, incommodum accipere, to suffer mishap, reverse, inconvenience; naufragium facere, to be shipwrecked.

damnum (opp. lucrum) = loss, especially of worldly possessions; detrimentum (opp. emolumentum) = harm inflicted by others; fraus = deceitful injury; iactura (properly "throwing overboard") = the intentional sacrifice of something valuable in order either to avert injury or to gain some greater advantage. "Harmful" = inutilis, qui nocet, etc., not noxius, which is only used absolutely—e.g. homo noxius, the offender, evildoer.
benevolentiam habere erga aliquem
benevolentiam, favorem, voluntatem aliquius sibi conciliare or colligere (ex aliqua re)
benevolentiam aliquui praestare, in aliquem conferre
benevolentia aliquum complecti or prosequi
gratiosum esse aliquui or apud aliquuem
in gratia esse apud aliquuem
multum valere gratia apud aliquuem
flore gratia aliquuius

gratiam inire ab aliquo apud aliquuem
in gratiam aliquius venire
gratiam aliquius sibi quaerere, sequi, more strongly aucupari
studere, favere aliquui
studiosum esse aliquuius
propenso animo, studio esse or propensa
voluntate esse in aliquem (opp. averso animo esse ab aliquuo)
alicuius morem gerere, obsequi

alicuius causa 77 velle or cupere
gratum (gratissimum) aliquui facere
se conformare, se accommodare ad aliquuius voluntatem
alicuius voluntati morem gerere
se convertere, converti ad aliquuius nutum 78
totum se fingere et accommodare ad aliquuius arbitrium et nutum
voluntatemor animum aliquuius a se abalienare, aliquuem a se abalienare or alienare

13. Benefit—Gratitude—Recompense

beneficium aliquui dare, tribuere
beneficio aliquuem afficere, ornare
beneficia in aliquem conferre
beneficiis aliquem obstringere, obligare, devincire
to do any one a service or kindness.
to lay any one under an obligation by kind treatment.

77 Probably originally omnia aliquuius causa velle = to wish everything (favourable) in some one's behalf.
78 But se convertere ad aliquuem = either (1) to approach with hostile intention, or (2) to turn to some one for sympathy or assistance.
beneficium remunerari or reddere (cumulate) to (richly) recompense a kindness or service.
gratus (opp. ingratus) animus 79 gratitude.
gratiam alicui debere to owe gratitude to; to be under an obligation to a person.
gratiam alicui habere to feel gratitude (in one's heart).
gratiam alicui referre (meritam, debitam) pro aliqua re to show gratitude (in one's acts).
gratias alicui agere pro aliqua re to thank a person (in words).
grates agere (dis immortalibus) to give thanks to heaven.
gratiam mereri to merit thanks; to do a thankworthy action.
par pari referre to return like for like.
bonam (praecolam) gratiam referre to reward amply; to give manifold recompense for.
benefacta maleficiis pensare to return evil for good.
maleficia benefactis remunerari to return good for evil.
pro maleficiis beneficia reddere to return good for evil.

14. Merit—Value—Reward

bene, praecclare (melius, optime) mereri 80 de aliquo to deserve well at some one's hands; to do a service to...
male mereri de aliquo to deserve ill of a person; to treat badly.
meritum alicuius in or erga aliquem nullo meo merito to consider of importance; to set much (some) store by a thing.
ex, pro merito to value, esteem a person.
multum (aliquid) alicui rei tribuere to remunerate (handsomely).
multum alicui tribuere praemii (amplissimis, maximis) aliquem afficere to reward a man according to his deserts.
meritum praemium alicui persolvere to reward a man according to his deserts.
praemium exponere or proponere to offer a prize (for the winner).
praemium ponere to offer a prize (for the winner).
palmam deferre, dare alicui to award the prize to...
palmar ferre, auferre the stipulated reward for anything.
pacta merces alicuius rei to be hired, suborned.
mercede conductum esse

79 animus is used similarly in several periphrases to express abstract qualities—e.g. animus inexorabilis = inflexibility, severity; animus implacabilis = implacability; animus (fides) venalis = venality. Cf. simplices mores, simplex natura, ratio, genus = simplicity (simplicitas is post-Augustan and usually = frankness, candour). immemor ingenium = forgetfulness (oblivio in this sense is not classical).
80 mereri is a middle verb, and consequently always has an adverb with it.
81 Notice the numerous phrases of which afficere is a part—e.g. afficere alicuem admiratione, beneficio, exilio, honore, inuaria, laude, poena, supplicio. Especially important is its passive use—e.g. affici admiratione, to admire; gaudio, voluptate, to rejoice, be pleased; dolore, to be pained, vexed; poena, to suffer punishment.
15. Requests—Wishes—Commissions—Orders

orare et obsecrare aliquem to entreat earnestly; to make urgent requests.
magno opere, vehementer, etiam etiam rogare aliquem to entreat earnestly; to make urgent requests.
precibus aliquem fatigare to importune with petitions.
supplicibus verbis orare to crave humbly; to supplicate.
precibus obsequi to grant a request.
alicui petenti satisfacere, non deesse to accede to a man's petitions.
magnis (infimis) precibus moveri to be influenced by, to yield to urgent (abject) entreaty.

negare, more strongly denegare alicui aliquid to refuse, reject a request.

petenti alicui negare aliquid to refuse, reject a request.
repudiare, asperrnari preces alicius to refuse, reject a request.
nihil tibi a me postulanti recusabo I will refuse you nothing.
aliquid ab aliquo impetrare my wishes are being fulfilled.
optata mihi contingunt as one would wish; to one's mind.
voluntati alicuius satisfacere, obsequi to wish prosperity to an undertaking.
ex sententia I wish you all success in the matter.

alicui optimis omnibus prosequi (vid. sect. VI. 11., note Prosequi...) to wish prosperity to an undertaking.
bene id tibi vertat! I wish you all success in the matter.
mandatum, negotium alicui dare to entrust a matter to a person; to commission.
negotium ad alicuem deferre to entrust a matter to a person; to commission.
mandatum exsequi, persequi, conficere to execute a commission.
iussa (usually only in plur.), imperata facere to carry out orders

16. Friendship—Enmity—Reconciliation (cf. xii. 8)

amicitiam cum aliquo jungere, facere, inire, contrahere to form a friendship with any one.
amicitiam colere to keep up, foster a connection.
uti aliquo amico to be friendly with any one.
est or intercedit mihi cum aliquo amicitia I am on good terms with a person.
sunt or intercedunt mihi cum aliquo amicitiae 62 I am on bad terms with a person.

uti aliquo familiariter to be on very intimate terms with...
artissimo amicitiae vinculo or summa to be bound by the closest ties of friendship.
familiaritate cum aliquo coniunctum esse to be very old friends.
vetustate amicitiae coniunctum esse to court a person's friendship.
amicitiam alicuius appetere to gain some one's friendship; to become intimate with.
in amicitiam alicuius recipi to gain some one's friendship; to become intimate with.

ad alicuius amicitiam se conferre, se applicare to admit another into the circle of one's

alicuiam (tertium) ad (in) amicitiam ascribere

62 The singular inimicitia is only used to express the abstract idea "enmity".
amicitiam renuntiare
amicitiam dissuere, dissolvere, praecidere
amicissimus meus or mihi
homo intimus, familiarissimus mihi
inimicitias gerere, habere, exercere cum aliquo
inimicitias cum aliquo suscipere
inimicitias deponere
eaqui iniqui
placare aliquem alicui or in aliquem
reconciliare alicuius animum or simply alicui
in gratiam aliquem cum aliquo reducere
in gratiam cum aliquo redire
sibi aliquem, alicuius animum reconciliare or reconciliari alicui

intimates
to renounce, give up a friendship.
to renounce, give up a friendship.
my best friend.
my most intimate acquaintance.
to be at enmity with a man.
to make a person one's enemy.
to lay aside one's differences.
friend and foe.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.

17. Authority—Dignity (cf. xiv. 3)

magna auctoritate esse to possess great authority; to be an influential person.
auctoritate valere or florere to possess great authority; to be an influential person.
multa auctoritas est in aliquo to possess great authority; to be an influential person.
multa auctoritate valere, posse apud aliquem to have great influence with a person; to have considerable weight.
magna auctoritas alicuius est apud aliquem to have great influence with a person; to have considerable weight.
alicuius auctoritas multum valet apud aliquem to have great influence with a person; to have considerable weight.
auctoritatem or dignitatem alicuius amplificare (opp. imminuere, minuere) to increase a person's dignity.
auctoritati, dignitati alicuius illudere to insult a person's dignity.
dignitas est summa in aliquo to be in a dignified position.
summa dignitate praeditum esse to be in a dignified position.
aliquid alienum (a) dignitate sua or merely se ducere to consider a thing beneath one's dignity.
aliquid infra se ducere or infra se positum arbitrari to consider a thing beneath one's dignity.

18. Praise—Approval—Blame—Reproach

laudem tribuere, impertire alicui to praise, extol, commend a person.
laude afficere alicuem to praise, extol, commend a person.
(maximis, summis) laudibus efferre alicuem or alicui
eximia laude ornare aliquem
omni laude cumulare aliquem
laudibus aliquem (aliquid) in caelum ferre, efferre, tollere
alicius laudes praelicicare
aliquem beatum praelicicare
omnium undique laudem colligere
maximam ab omnibus laudem adipisci
aliquid laudi alici ducere, dare
aliquem coram, in os praesentem laudare recte, bene fecisti quod...
res mihi probatur
res a me probatur
hoc in te reprehendo (not ob eam rem)
vituperationem subire
in vituperationem, reprehensionem cadere, incidere, venire
exprobrare alci aliquid
aliquid alici crimi dare, vertere
conqueri, expostulare cum aliquo de aliqua
re
to praise, extol, commend a person.
to overwhelm with eulogy.
to extol, laud to the skies.
to spread a person's praises.
to consider happy.
to win golden opinions from every one.
to win golden opinions from every one.
to consider a thing creditable to a man.
to praise a man to his face.
you were right in...; you did right to...


rumor, fama, sermo est or manat
famam incrébrescit
in ore omnium or omnibus (hominum or hominibus, but only mihi, tibi, etc.) esse
per omnium ora ferri
in ore habere aliquid Fam. 6. 18. 5
efferre or edere aliquid in vulgus
foras efferri, palam fieri, percrebrescere, divulgari, in medium proferri, exire, emanare
per omnium ora ferri
in ore habere aliquid Fam. 6. 18. 5
in sermonem hominum venire
in ora vulgi abire
fabulam fieri
nuntio allato or accepto
Romam nuntiatum est, allatum est
certiorem facere aliquem (alicius rei or de aliqua re)
report says; people say.
a rumour is prevalent.
a report is spreading imperceptibly.
a report, an impression is gaining ground.
to spread a rumour.
to spread a rumour.
vague rumours reach us.
to know from hearsay.
to know from hearsay.
I heard him say...
every one says.
to be in every one's mouth.
to be in every one's mouth.
to harp on a thing, be always talking of it.
to divulge, make public.
to become known, become a topic of common conversation (used of things).
to be a subject for gossip.
to be a subject for gossip.
to be the talk of the town, a scandal.
on receiving the news.
news reached Rome.
to inform a person.
mentionem facere alicuius rei or de aliqua re

mentionem inicere de aliqua re or Acc. c. Inf.
in mentionem alicuius rei incidere
mentio alicuius rei incidit

to mention a thing.
to mention a thing incidentally, casually.
to mention a thing incidentally, casually.
to mention a thing incidentally, casually.

20. Fame—Reputation

gloriam, famam sibi comparare
gloriam (immortalem) consequi, adipsici

gloriae, laude esse

laudem afferre
gloria, laude florere
summa gloria florere

clarum fieri, nobilitari, illustrari (not the post-classical clarescere or inclarescere

gloriam colligere, in summam gloriam venire
alicuem immortali gloria afficere

alicuem sempiterneae gloriae commendare

immortalitatem consequi, adipsici, sibi parere
gloria duce
laudis studio trahi
laudem, gloriam quaerere
stimulus gloriae concitari

gloriae, laude cupiditate incensum esse, flagrare
de gloria, fama alicuius detrahare

alicuius gloriae or simply alicui obtrectare

alicuius famam, laudem imminuere

obscure alicuius gloria, laudem, famam (not obscurare aliquem)
famae servire, consulere
famam ante collectam tueri, conservare
bene, male audire (ab aliqua)

bona, mala existimatio est de aliqua

to gain distinction.
to win (undying) fame.
to confer distinction on a person; to redound to his credit.
to confer distinction on a person; to redound to his credit.
to be very famous, illustrious.
to have reached the highest pinnacle of eminence.
to become famous, distinguish oneself.
to become famous, distinguish oneself.
to confer undying fame on, immortalise some one.
to confer undying fame on, immortalise some one.
to attain eternal renown.
to be guided by ambition.
to be guided by ambition.
to be guided by ambition.
to be spurred on by ambition.
to be consumed by the fires of ambition.
to detract from a person's reputation, wilfully underestimate a person.
to detract from a person's reputation, wilfully underestimate a person.
to detract from a person's reputation, wilfully underestimate a person.
to render obscure, eclipse a person.
to have regard for one's good name.
to live up to one's reputation.
to have a good or bad reputation, be spoken well, ill of.
to have a good or bad reputation, be spoken well, ill of.

83 Not commemorare, the fundamental meaning of which is "to make a person mindful of...," and implies an emphatic reference to a definite point.
84 In the same way, to improve a man, alicuius mores corrige (not aliquem c.); to understand some one, alicuius orationem or quid dicat intelligere.
famam crudelitatis subire (Catil. 4. 6. 12)
infamiam alicui inferre, aspergere

infamem facere alicuem
magnam sui famam relinquere
opinioem virtutis habere
existimatio 85 hominum, omnium
to gain the reputation of cruelty.
to damage a person's character, bring him into bad odour.
to damage a person's character, bring him into bad odour.
to leave a great reputation behind one.
to have the reputation of virtue.
the common opinion, the general idea.

21. Honour—Disgrace—Ignominy

esse in honore apud alicuem
honorem alicui habere, tribuere
alicuem honore afficere, augere, ornare, prosequi (vid. sect. VI. 11., note Prosequi...)
alicuem cupiditate honorum inflammare (or alicuem ad cupiditatem honorum inflammare)
honores concupiscere (opp. aspernari)
honoris causa alicuem nominare or appellare
statuam alicui ponere, constituere
alicuem colere et observare (Att. 2. 19)
alicuem ignominia afficere, notare
alicui ignominiam inurere
infamiam concipere, subire, sibi confiare vitae splendori(em) maculas(is) aspergere
notam turpitudinis alicui or vitae alicuis inurere
ignominiam non ferre
maculam (conceptam) delere, eluere
to be honoured, esteemed by some one.
to honour, show respect for, a person.
to honour, show respect for, a person.
to kindle ambition in some one's mind.
to aspire to dignity, high honours.
to speak of some one respectfully.
to set up a statue in some one's honour.
to pay respect to, be courteous to a person.
to inflict an indignity upon, insult a person.
to inflict an indignity upon, insult a person.
to incur ignominy.
to sully one's fair fame.
to injure a man's character, tarnish his honour.
to chafe under an indignity, repudiate it.
to blot out a reproach.

22. Effort—Industry—Labour—Exertion

studiose (diligenter, enixe, sedulo, maxime)
dare operam, ut...
egregiam operam (multum, plus etc. opera)
dare alicui rei
operam alicui rei tribuere, in aliquid conferre
operam (laborem, curam) in or ad aliquid impendere
multum operae ac laboris consumere in aliqua re
studium, industriam (not diligentiam)
collocare, ponere in aliqua re
incumbere in (ad) aliquid
to take great pains in order to...
to expend great labour on a thing.
to expend great labour on a thing.
to expend great labour on a thing.
to exert oneself very energetically in a matter.
to apply oneself zealously, diligently to a thing.
to be energetic about, throw one's heart into a thing.

85 existimatio has two uses: (1) active—opinion held by others, criticism; (2) passive—reputation, character, usually in a good sense, consequently = good reputation without the addition of bona, integra, etc.
opus 86 facere (De Senect. 7. 24)
opus aggredi
ad opus faciendum accedere
res est multi laboris et sudoris
desudare et elaborare in aliqua re (De Senect. 11. 38)
labori, operae non parcer
laborem non intermittere
nullum tempus a labore intermittere
lucubrare (Liv. 1. 57)
inanem laborem suscipere
operam (et oleum) perdere or frustra consumere
rem actam or simply actum agere (proverb.)
labore supersedere (itineris) (Fam. 4. 2. 4)
patients laboris
fugiens laboris
operae pretium est (c. Inf.)
acti labores iucundi (proverb.)
contentionem adhibere
omnia nervorum in aliqua re contendere
omnia ope atque opera or omni virium contetione eniti, ut
contendere et laborare, ut
pro viribus eniti et laborare, ut
to do work (especially agricultural).
to take a task in hand, engage upon it.
to take a task in hand, engage upon it.
the matter involves much labour and fatigue.
to exert oneself very considerably in a matter.
to spare no pains.
to work without intermission.
ot to leave off work for an instant.
to work by night, burn the midnight oil.
to lose one's labour.
to lose one's labour.
to have all one's trouble for nothing.
to spare oneself the trouble of the voyage.
capable of exertion.
lazy.
it is worth while.
rest after toil is sweet.
to exert oneself.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.
to have all one's trouble for nothing.
to spare oneself the trouble of the voyage.
capable of exertion.
lazy.
it is worth while.
rest after toil is sweet.
to exert oneself.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.
to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.

23. Business—Leisure—I nactivity—I dleness

negotium suscipere
negotium obire, exsequi
negotium conficere, expedere, transigere
negotia agere, gerere
multis negotiis implicatum, districtum, distentum, obrutum esse
to undertake an affair.
to execute, manage a business, undertaking.
to arrange, settle a matter.
to be occupied with business, busy.
to be involved in many undertakings; to be much occupied, embarrassed, overwhelmed by business-claims.

86 opus always means the concrete work on which one is engaged; labor is the trouble, fatigue, resulting from effort; opera is the voluntary effort, the trouble spent on an object. Thus laborare = not simply to work, but to work energetically, with exertion and consequent fatigue; operari, to be busy with a thing. Terence thus distinguishes opus and opera: quod in opere faciundo opera consumis tuae. Cf. Verg. Aen. 1. 455 operumque laborem miratur = the trouble with such huge works must have cost.

87 nervi properly = sinews, muscles, not nerves the existence of which was unknown to the ancients. Metaphorically nervi denotes not only strength in general but also specially—(1) vital power, elasticity, e.g. omnes nervos virtutis elidere (Tusc. 2. 11. 27), incidere, to paralyse the strength of virtue; (2) motive power, mainspring, essence, of a thing, e.g. vectigalia nervi rei publicae sunt (Imp. Pomp. 7. 17), nervi belli pecunia (Phil. 5. 2. 15).
negotiis vacare
to be free from business.
occupatum esse in aliqua re
to be engaged upon a matter.
intentum esse alicui rei
to be engaged upon a matter.
egnotium alicui facessere (Fam. 3. 10. 1)
to give a person trouble, inconvenience him.
magnum negotium est c. Inf.
it is a great undertaking to...
nullo negotio
without any trouble.

otiosum esse

in otio esse or vivere
to be at leisure.

otium habere
to be at leisure.

otio frui
to be at leisure.

otio abundare
to have abundance of leisure.

otium sequi, amplexari
to be a lover of ease, leisure.

otiosum tempus consumere in aliqua re
to spend one's leisure hours on an object.

otio abūtī 88 or otium ad suum usum

transferrre

(in) otio languere et hebescere
to grow slack with inactivity, stagnate.

otio diffluere
to grow slack with inactivity, stagnate.

desidiae et languori se dedere
to abandon oneself to inactivity and apathy.

ingnaviae 89 et socordiae se dare
to abandon oneself to inactivity and apathy.

per luxum et ignaviam aetatem agere
to pass one's life in luxury and idleness.

24. Pleasure—Recreation

voluptatem ex aliqua re capere or percepere
to derive pleasure from a thing.

voluptate perfundi
to revel in pleasure, be blissfully happy.

voluptatibus frui
to take one's fill of enjoyment.

voluptates haurire
to take one's fill of enjoyment.

se totum voluptatibus dedere, tradere
to devote oneself absolutely to the pursuit of pleasure.

homo voluptarius (Tusc. 2. 7. 18)
a devotee of pleasure; a self-indulgent man.

voluptatis illecebris deleniri
to be led astray, corrupted by the allurements of pleasure.

voluptatis blanditiis corrumpi
to be led astray, corrupted by the allurements of pleasure.

in voluptates se mergere
to plunge into a life of pleasure.

animus a voluptate sevocare
to hold aloof from all amusement.

voluptates (corporis)
sensual pleasure.

voluptatis or animi causa (B. G. 5. 12)
for one's own diversion; to satisfy a whim.

delicis diffuere

to wanton in the pleasures of sense.

animum relaxare, reficere, recreare or simply

se reficere, se recreare, refici, recreari (ex aliqua re)
to recruit oneself, seek relaxation.

animus or simply se remittere
to indulge oneself.

animo or simply sibi indulgere
to indulge oneself.

---

88 abuti properly = to consume, make full use of. From this is developed the rarer meaning to use in excess, abuse = perverse, intemperanter, immoderat uti. Abuse, misuse = pravus usus, vitium male utentium, insolens mos. abusus is only found in the Jurists, and abusio is a technical term of rhetoric = κατάχρησις.

89 The original meaning of ignavia (in-gnavus, cf. navus, navare) is not cowardice but laziness.
VI. The Mind; its Functions

1. Genius—Talent—Intelligence

*magno animo esse* to be magnanimous, broad-minded.
*animum attendere ad aliquid* to turn one's attention to a thing.
*diligenter attendere (aliquid)* to attend carefully.
*alias res or aliud agere* to be inattentive.
*animo adesse* to be attentive; (2) to keep one's presence of mind.

*vir magno ingenio, ingeniosus* a man of ability.
*vir magno ingenio praeditus* a man of ability.
*ingenio valere* to be talented, gifted.
*ingenio abundare* to be very talented.
*natura et ingenium* natural gifts.
*ingenium acuere* to sharpen the wits.
*ingenii acumen* penetration; sagacity.
*ingenii tarditas (opp. celeritas)* dulness of intellect.
*ingenii infirmitas or imbecillitas* weakmindedness.
*mentis compotem esse* to be of sane mind.
*mente captum esse, mente alienata esse* to be out of one's mind.
*sanæ mentis esse* to be of sound mind.
*mentis quasi luminibus officere (vid. sect. XIII. 6) or animo caliginem offundere* to obscure the mental vision.

*intellegentia or mente multum valere* to possess great ability.

*ad intellegentiam communem or popularem accommodare aliquid* to accommodate something to the standard of the popular intelligence.

2. Imagination—Thought

*animo, cogitatione aliquid fingere (or simply fingere, but without sibi), informare* to form an idea of a thing, imagine, conceive.
*animo concipere aliquid* to form an idea of a thing, imagine, conceive.

*animo, cogitatione aliquid praecipere* to form a conception of a thing beforehand.
*cogitatione sibi aliquid depingere* to picture to oneself.
*ingenium, cogitatio* imagination.
*ingenii vis or celeritas* vivid, lively imagination.
*rerum imagines* creatures of the imagination.
*opinionum commenta, ineptiae, monstra, portenta* extravagant fictions of fancy.

*animo, mente, cogitatione aliquid comprehendere, complecti* to grasp a thing mentally.

*For the second meaning cf. Cicero, ades animo et omittte timorem, Scipio.*

*captus, in the meaning ability, capacity, only occurs in the phrase ut captus est servorum; while capacitatis merely means capacity, content, e.g. vassorum.*
in eam cogitationem incidere
to happen to think of...

haec cogitatio subit animum
an idea strikes me.

illud succurrit mihi
an idea strikes me.

mihi in mentem venit alicuius rei
something comes into my mind.

aliquid animo meo obversatur (cf. sect. III,
a vague notion presents itself to my mind.
    s. v. oculi)

alicuem ad eam cogitationem adducere ut
to induce a person to think that...

alicuius animum ab aliqua re abducere
to draw away some one's attention from a
ting.

mihi in mentem venit alicuius rei
something comes into my mind.

aliquid animo meo obversatur (cf. sect. III,
a vague notion presents itself to my mind.

in cogitationem defixum esse
to be deep in thought.

ad summum perfectionem, (ad summum) pervenire
to attain perfection.

alisauus numero absolutus (N. D. 2. 13)
perfect in every detail.

species optima or eximia, specimen, also
an ideal.

comprehensam quandam animo speciem
a vague, undeveloped idea.

(alicuius rei) habere
innate ideas.

singularem quandam perfectionis imaginem
vague, undeveloped ideas.

animo concipere
to form a conception, notion of a thing.

imaginem perfecti oratoris adumbrare
to sketch the ideal of an orator.

civitas optima, perfecta Platonis
Plato's ideal republic.

illa civitas, quam Plato finxit
Plato's ideal republic.

3. Conceptions—Ideals—Perfection

notiones animo (menti) insitae, innatae
innate ideas.

intellegentiae adumbratae ⁹² or incohatae
vague, undeveloped ideas.

notionem or rationem alicuius rei in animo
to form a conception, notion of a thing.

informare or animo concipere
absolutely perfect.

absolutus et perfectus
perfect in every detail.

omnibus numeris absolutus (N. D. 2. 13)
to bring to the highest perfection.

ad summum perducere
to bring to the highest perfection.

persevere

ad perfectionem, (ad summum) pervenire
to attain perfection.

absoluto et perfectio (not summam perfectio)
to be deep in thought.

cognitione, non re

aliquem in aliqua re defigere
to fix all one's thoughts on an object.

in cogitatione defixum esse
to study the commonplace.

omnes cogitationes ad aliquid conferre
to give all one's attention to a thing.

mentem in aliqua re defigere
to fix all one's thoughts on an object.

in cogitatione defixum esse
to study the commonplace.

4. Opinion—Prejudice—Conjecture

comprehensam quandam animo speciem
a vague, undeveloped idea.

(alicuius rei) habere
innate ideas.

singularem quandam perfectionis imaginem
vague, undeveloped ideas.

animo concipere
to form a conception, notion of a thing.

imaginem perfecti oratoris adumbrare
to sketch the ideal of an orator.

civitas optima, perfecta Platonis
Plato's ideal republic.

illa civitas, quam Plato finxit
Plato's ideal republic.

⁹² adumbrare is a technical term of painting = to make a sketch, outline of an object; then
metaphorically, to merely hint at a thing. Its opposite is exprimere, technical term of sculpture, =
figuratively, to represent exactly, clearly. It never has the simple meaning "to express."
in sententia manere, permanere, perseverare, perstare
illud, hoc teneo
a sententia sua discedere
de sententia sua decedere
(de) sententia desistere
de sententia deici, depelli, deterreri
de sententia aliquem deducere, movere
aliquem ad saum sententiam perducere or in saum sententiam adducere
ad aliquius sententiam accedere, sententiam aliquius sequi
idem sentire (opp. dissentire ab aliquo)
sententiam suam aperire
sententiam fronte celare, tegere
dic quid sentias
in hac sum sententia, ut...putem
plura in eam sententiam disputare
ut mea fert opinio
ut mihi quidem videtur
mea (quidem) sententia
quot homines, tot sententiae
opiniones falsas animo imbibere
opinionibus falsis imbui
opinionis error
opinio praedicta, also simply opinio (not praedictum = a preliminary decision)
opinio confirmata, inveterata
opinionum pravitate infici
opinionum commenta (N. D. 2. 2. 5)
monstra or portenta
coniectura assequi, consequi, aliquid coniectura colligere
quantum ego coniectura assequor, auguror coniecturam alicius rei facere or capere ex aliqua re
de se (ex se de aliis) coniecturam facere aliquid in coniectura positum est aliquid coniectura nititur, continetur (Div. 1. 14. 24)
probabilia coniectura sequi
aliquid mihi nec opinanti, insperanti accidit
to abide by, persist in one's opinion.
I abide by this opinion.
to give up one's opinion.
to give up one's opinion.
to give up one's opinion.
to be forced to change one's mind.
to make a man change his opinion.
to win a man over to one's own way of thinking.
to adopt some one's opinion.
to hold the same views.
to freely express one's opinions.
not to betray one's feelings by one's looks.
give me your opinion.
I think that...
to discuss a subject more fully on the same lines.
according to my opinion.
according to my opinion.
according to my opinion.
many men, many minds.
to be imbibing false opinions.
to be imbibing false opinions.
erroneous opinion.
prejudice.
a rooted opinion.
to be filled with absurd prejudices.
chimeras.
mavellous ideas; prodigies.
to conjecture.
as far as I can guess.
to infer by comparison, judge one thing by another.
to judge others by oneself.
it is a matter of conjecture, supposition.
it is a matter of conjecture, supposition.
to try to conjecture probabilities.
a thing has happened contrary to my expectation.

5. Truth—Error

verum dicere, profiteri
to speak the truth, admit the truth.

________________________
93 se aperire = to betray oneself; cf. se indicare (Liv. 2. 12).
94 Not sententiam dicere, which is used of senators giving their vote; cf. suffragium ferre.
omnia ad veritatem dicere
veritatis amans, diligens, studiosus
a vero aversum esse (Catil. 3. 1. 29)
a veritate deflectere, desciscere
veri videndi, investigandi cupiditas
veri inquisitio atque investigatio
a vero abduci
proxime ad verum accedere
a vero non abhorrere
veri simile esse
haec speciosiora quam veriora sunt
vera et falsa (a falsis) diiudicare
vera cum falsis confundere
veritas
re (vera), reapse (opp. specie)
in errore versari
magnus errore teneri
in magna errore versari
vehementer errare
erroribus implicari (Tusc. 4. 27. 58)
per errorem labi, or simply labi
a quem in errorem inducere, rapere
errorem animo imbibere
errorem cum lacte nutricis sugere (Tusc. 3. 1. 2)
error longe lateque diffusus
errorem tollere
errorem amputare et circumcidere
errorem spiritus extrahere
errorem deponere, corrigere
alicui errorem demere, eripere, extorquere
nisi fallor
nisi (animus) me fallit
nisi omnia me fallunt

6. Choice—Doubt—Scruple

optionem alicui dare (Acad. 2. 7. 19)
optionem alicui dare, utrum...\ an
in dubium vocare
in dubio ponere
in dubium venire
quod aliquam (magnam) dubitationem habet (Leg. Agr. 1. 4. 11)
dubitatio mihi affertur, initatur
dubitationem alicui tollere
aliquid in medio, in dubio reliquere (Cael.

\footnote{verum = the truth, concrete; veritas = truth in the abstract.}
aliquid dubium, incertum relinquere  
sine dubio (not sine ullo dubio)  
sine ulla dubitatione

to leave a thing undecided.  
without doubt, beyond all doubt.  
without any hesitation; without the least scruple.

scrupulum ex animo alicuius evellere (Rosc. Am. 2. 6)

unus mihi restat scrupulus (Ter. Andr. 5. 4. 37) (cf. too religio, sect. XI. 2)

one thing still makes me hesitate.

7. Knowledge—Certainty—Persuasion

certo (certe) scio (Arch. 12. 32) 
probe scio, non ignoro 
non sum ignarus, nescius (not non sum inscius) 
me non fugit, praeterit 
quantum scio 
quod sciam 
hoc (not tantum) certum est 
aliiquid compertum habere 
ilud pro certo affirmare licet 
mihi exploratum est, exploratum (certum) habeo 
inter omnes constat 
mihi persuasum est (cf. too religio, sect. XI. 2) 
mihi persuasi 
sic habeto 

to know a fact.  
I know very well.  
I know very well.  
as far as I know.  
as far as I know.  
this much is certain.  
to know a thing for certain.  
this much I can vouch for.  
I am quite certain on the point.  
it is a recognised fact.  
I am persuaded, convinced.  
I am persuaded, convinced.  
convince yourself of this; rest assured on this point.  
convince yourself of this; rest assured on this point.  
convince yourself of this; rest assured on this point.  
I am gradually convinced that...  
I cannot make myself believe that...  
to act in accordance with one's convictions.

8. Plan—Advice—Deliberation

consilium capere, inire (de aliqua re, with Gen. gerund., with Inf., more rarely ut) 
consilio desistere

to form a plan, make a resolution.  
to give up a project, an intention.

96 With certe scio, which is the form Cicero usually employs, the certitude lies in our knowledge, certum est me scire; with certo scire the certitude lies in the object of our knowledge. certo rarely occurs except with scio.

97 Caesar occasionally uses persuasum sibi habere.
consilium abicere or deponere
to let a plan fall through.
a consilio deterrerì aliquà re
to be deterred from one's intention by something.
mediocribus consiliis uti
to adopt half-measures.
consilium, sententiam mutare
to alter one's views, intentions.
suo consilio uti
to go one's own way, proceed independently.
magna moliri
to be busy with ambitious projects.
consilia cum aliquò communicare
(1) to communicate one's plans to some one; (2) to make common cause with a person. Similarly c. causam, rationem.
to take common counsel.
suo consilio uti
98

to go one's own way, proceed independently.
consilia inter se communicare
to consult a person, take his advice.
to deliberate together (of a number of people).
consultare or deliberare (de aliquà re)
to deliberate, consider (of individuals).
consilis arcánis interesse (Liv. 35. 18)
to be present at secret consultations.
consilium dare alicui
to give a person advice.
consilii habere (de aliquà re)
to deliberate together (of a number of people).
consultare or deliberare (de aliquà re)
to deliberate, consider (of individuals).
consilium dare alicui
to give a person advice.
notarum esse alicui, ut
to give a person the advantage of one's advice (and actual support).
aliquam consilio (et re) iuvare
I put myself at your disposal as regards advice.
consilium mei copiam facio tibi
I apply to a person for advice.
nullo consilio, nulla ratione, temere
without reflection; inconsiderately; rashly.
secum (cum animo) reputare aliquid
to think over, consider a thing.
agitare (in) mente or (in) animo aliquid
to think over, consider a thing.
aliquid cadit in deliberationem (Off. 1. 3. 9)
a subject becomes matter for reflection.
re diligenter considerata, perpensa
after mature deliberation.
omnibus rebus circumspectis
after mature deliberation.
inita subductaque ratione
after mature deliberation.

9. Resolve—Design—Intention

in animo habeo or mihi est in animo c. Inf.
I am resolved; it is my intention.
certum (mihi) est
I am determined.
certum deliberatumque est
I am firmly resolved.
stat mihi sententia (Liv. 21. 30.)
I am firmly resolved.
incertus sum, quid consilii capiam
I am undecided...

98 uti is similarly used in several phrases, especially with the meaning of having, showing, enjoying, practising, proving, etc., e.g. uti ventis secundis, adversis; praesentì animo uti, to show presence of mind; perpetua felicitate, to enjoy...; prudentia, severitate, crudelitate, to show...; bona valetudine, prospero fortunae fiatu, to enjoy...; cf. sect. V. 6.
99 communicare (aliquid cum aliquò) means properly to share a thing with some one. From this are developed the two senses—1. to give some one something, e.g. consilia, laudem, gloriàm alicuius reì; 2. to receive a share of a thing, e.g. pericula, paupertatem. "To communicate," i.e. to announce, inform, is represented by dicere, tradere, narrare, exponere, certiorem facere, etc.
mihi non constat (with indirect question) I have not made up my mind.
propositum est mihi c. Inf.
I intend, propose to...
propositum, consilium tenere (opp. a proposito deterreri)
to abide by one's resolution.
propositum assequi, peragere
to carry out one's plan.
magna sibi proponere or magna spectare

to have a high object in view; to be ambitious.

in incepto or conatu perstare
to persevere in one's resolve.
in proposito susceperque consilio permanere
to persevere in one's resolve.
incepto or conatu desistere
to give up one's project.
parare aliquid
to take measures for...
animum inducere c. Inf. (not in animum inducere)
to persuade oneself to...
a me impetrare non possum, ut I cannot bring myself to...
descendere ad aliquid, ad omnia (vid. sect. V. 9, note Similarly descendere...)
to consent to..., lend oneself to...
descendere ad extrema consilia (Fam. 10. 33. 4)
to have recourse to extreme measures.

10. Object—Aim—Hesitation—Delay

consilium est c. Inf. or ut my intention is...
id sequor, ut

the matter tends towards..., has this object.
spectare aliquid or ad aliquid

there seems a prospect of armed violence; things look like violence.
res eo spectat, ut

he attained his object.
res spectat ad vim (arma)

he attained his object.

id quod voluit consecutus est

what do you mean to do? what is the meaning of this?
what is the meaning of this? with the intention of...

ad id quod voluit pervenit
designedly; intentionally.

quid tibi vis?

with this very object.
quid hoc sibi vult?

to no purpose; ineffectually.
quid hoc rei est?

to retard, delay a thing.
eo consilio, ea mente, ut
to detain a person.
deliberatio, dedita opera (opp. imprudens)
to make all possible haste to...

ad id ipsum

without delay.

infecta re (Liv. 9. 32)
to put off from one day to another.
moram aliqui rei afferre, inferre, facere

nullam moram interponere, quin (Phil. 10. 1. 1)

diem ex die ducere, differre

in mora aliqui esse

without delay.
nulam moram interposita

The aim, tendency of a writing or a poem is consilium, quo liber scriptus est, quo carmen compositum est, or quod quis in libro scribendo secutus est, not consilium libri.

100 In classical prose propositum is still semi-adjectival and has not yet acquired all the functions of a substantive; consequently it cannot be joined to a genitive, an adjective, or a pronoun. Cf. the treatment of factum, dictum, etc., in Augustan Latin.

101 Note Athenae a Persis petutuntur, the object of the Persian invasion is Athens (Nep. Them. 2. 6).

102 The aim, tendency of a writing or a poem is consilium, quo liber scriptus est, quo carmen compositum est, or quod quis in libro scribendo secutus est, not consilium libri.
11. Remembrance—Forgetfulness

memorā tenere aliquid
to remember a thing perfectly.

memoriam alicuius rei tenere

to remember a thing perfectly.

recenti memoria tenere aliquid
to have a vivid recollection of a thing.

memoriā (multum) valere (opp. memorīā vacillare)
to have a good memory.

memorem esse (opp. obliviosum esse)

he had such an extraordinary memory that...

to make a slip of the memory.

memoria mandare aliquid

to impress on the memory.

ex memoria (opp. de scripto)

from memory; by heart.

memoriter

(1) with good memory; (2) from personal recollection.

memoria custodire

to keep in mind.

memoriam alicuius rei renovare, revocare

to recall a thing to one's recollection.

in memoriam alicuius redire

to recall to mind a thing or person.

in memoriam alicuius redigere, reducere aliquid (not revocare)
to recall to mind a thing or person.

memoria et recordatio

vivid recollection.

grata memoria aliquem prosequi

to show a thankful appreciation of a person's kindness.

nomen alicuius grato animo prosequi

to think of a person with a grateful sense of his goodness.

memoriam alicuius rei repraesentare

to picture to oneself again.

(opp. memoriam alicuius rei deponere, abicere)
to retain the recollection of a thing.

memoriam alicuius rei conservare, retinere

to show an affectionate regard for a person's memory.

memoriam alicuius pie inviolateque servare

to win renown amongst posterity by some act.

gratam (gratissimam) alicuius memoriam retinere

to retain a (most) pleasant impression of a person.

numquam ex animo meo memoria illius rei discedet

the memory of this will never fade from my mind.

aliquid in memoria nostra penitus insidet

a thing has been vividly impressed on our memory.

memoriam eius nulla umquam delebit (obscurabit) oblivio (Fam. 2. 1)

nothing will ever make me forgetful of him.

semper memoria eius in (omnium) mentibus haeret

nothing will ever make me forgetful of him.

nomen suum posteritati aliqua re commendare, propagare, prodere

to immortalise one's name.

memoriam nominis sui immortali
tadere,

To Transcriber's Note: The original text indeed has "my", which is wrong, however, because the Latin phrase uses "nostra". The French edition uses "notre mémoire".
mandare, commendare
post hominum memoriam
post homines natos
memoriae causa, ad (not in) memoriam (Brut. 16. 62)
oblio alicuius rei me capit
ali quem in oblivionem alicuius rei adducere
(pas. in oblivionem venire)
ali quid excidit e memoria, effluit, excidit ex
animo
memoria alicuius rei excidit, abit, abolevit

obliterari (Liv. 26. 41)
memoria alicuius rei obscuratur, obliteratur,
evanescit
oblivioni esse, dari
in oblivionem adduci
oblivione obruir, deleri, exstingui
in oblivione iacère (of persons)
ali quid ab oblivione vindicare
mementote with Acc. c. Inf.

12. Theory—Practice—Experience

ratione, doctrina (opp. usu) alicui cognitum habere
ad artem, ad rationem revocare alicui (De Or. 2. 11. 44)
doctrinam ad usum adiungere
in rebus atque in usu versatum esse
usu praeditum esse
magnitude usum in aliqua re habere
multarum rerum usus
usu rerum (vitae, vitae communis) edocti sumus
experti scimus, didicimus
usu cognitum habemus
res ipsa, usus rerum (cotidie) docet
(rerum) imperitum esse
multa acerba expertus est
usus me docuit

within the memory of man.
in memory of...
I forget something.
to make a person forget a thing.
a thing escapes, vanishes from the memory.
the recollection of a thing has been entirely lost.
to be forgotten, pass into oblivion.
to be forgotten, pass into oblivion.
to be forgotten, pass into oblivion.
to be forgotten, pass into oblivion.
to be forgotten, pass into oblivion.
not do forget.
to have a theoretical knowledge of a thing.
to reduce a thing to its theoretical principles;
to apply theory to a thing.
to have had practical experience.
to possess experience.
to have had great experience in a thing.
varied, manifold experience.
we know from experience.
we know from experience.
everyday experience tells us this.
to have had no experience of the world.
he has had many painful experiences.
experience has taught me.

---

106 One can also say monumenti causa—e.g. alicui alicui momenti causa relinquere. Cf. such turnings as alicuius memoria aliqu re proseque, celebrare, renovare.
107 This and the following expressions are useful to express the passive of oblivisci.
108 Not experientia, which in classical prose means attempt, proof.
109 experiri is only used of personal experience.
VII. The Arts and Sciences

1. Scientific Knowledge in General—Literature

optima studia, bonae, optimae, liberales, ingenuae artes, disciplinae
litterarum studium or tractatio (not occupatio)
homines litterarum studiosi
hombres docti
artium studia or artes vigent (not florent)
litterae iacent, neglectae iacent

litterae
litteras colere
litteras amplecti
litteras adamasce (only in perf. and plup.)
in studio litterarum versari
in aliquo litterarum generi versari
se totum litteris tradere, dedere
se totum in litteras or se litteris abdere
in litteris elaborare (De Sen. 8. 26)

in litteris acquiescere or conquiescere
aetatem in litteris ducere, agere
omne (otiosum) tempus in litteris consumere
omne studium in litteris collocare, ad litteras conferre

optimarum artium studio incensum esse
litterarum studio trahi
trahi, ferri ad litteras
litterarum studia remittere
intermissa studia revocare

primis (ut dicitur) or primoribus labris

litterae
litterae ac monumenta or simply monumenta
litterae latinae
clarissima litterarum lumina
graecis litteris studere
multum (mediocrirer) in graecis litteris

the sciences; the fine arts.
the study of belles-lettres; literary pursuits.
learned, scientific, literary men.
learned, scientific, literary men.
learning, scientific knowledge is flourishing.
scholarship, culture, literature is at a low ebb.
to be engaged in the pursuit of letters.
to be an enthusiastic devotee of letters.
to be engaged in literary pursuits.
to be engaged in any branch of study.
to be an ardent student of...
to devote oneself entirely to literature.
to be quite engrossed in literary studies.
to apply oneself very closely to literary, scientific work.
to find recreation in study.
to devote one's life to science, study.
to devote all one's leisure moments to study.
to employ all one's energies on literary work.
to be interested in, have a taste for culture.
to feel an attraction for study.
to feel an attraction for study.
to relax one's studies.
to have a superficial knowledge, a smattering of literature, of the sciences.
literature.
written records; documents.
Roman literature.
shining lights in the literary world.
to study Greek literature.
to be well (slightly) acquainted with Greek

littera in sing. = letter of the alphabet, e.g. litteram nullam ad me misi. In plur. = 1. letters of the alphabet, characters (cf. viii. 9); 2. a letter (epistola); 3. writings, books, e.g. graecae de philosophia litterae; 4. literature, graecas litteras discere; 5. literary pursuits; 6. science; 7. culture, erudition, learning, erant in eo plurimae litterae, neque eae vulgares, sed interiores quaedam et reconditae.

iacere metaphorically is used not only of things neglected and abandoned, but of persons (cf. frigere) who have lost all their political influence.

Cf. Pro Caelio 12, 28 extremis ut dicitur digits attingere.

latinus is only used of language and literature, Romanus of nationality.
2. Learning—Erudition

vir or homo doctus, litteratus a man of learning; a scholar; a savant.
vir doctissimus a great scholar.
vir perfecte planeque eruditus a man of profound erudition.
vir omni doctrina eruditus a man perfect in all branches of learning.
multi viri docti, or multi et ii docti (not multi docti) many learned men; many scholars.
omnes docti, quivis doctus, doctissimus quisque all learned men.
nemo doctus no man of learning.
nemo mediocriter doctus no one with any pretence to education.
latinis litteris or latine doctus acquainted with the Latin language.
bene 114 latine doctus or sciens a good Latin scholar.
doctra a doctrina abundare (De Or. 3. 16. 59) to be a man of great learning.
da doctrina mediocriter instructum esse to have received only a moderate education.
doctrina recondita profound erudition.
studia, quae in reconditis artibus versantur abstruse studies.
De Or. 1. 2. 8
to pass as a man of great learning.
magnam doctrinae speciem prae se ferre the contemplative life of a student.
vita umbratilis (vid. sect. VII. 4) to possess literary knowledge.
litterarum scientiam (only in sing.) habere to acquire knowledge of a subject.
scientiam alicuius rei consequi to have a thorough grasp of a subject.
scientia comprehendere aliquid to acquire knowledge of a subject.
scientia augere aliquem to enrich a person’s knowledge.
multa cognita, perpecta habere, multis didicisse to be well-informed, erudite.
multarum rerum cognitione imbutum esse to be well-informed, erudite.

3. Culture—Civilisation

animum, ingenium excolere (not colere) to cultivate the mind.
animi, ingenii cultus (not cultura) mental culture.
optimis studiis or artibus, optimarum artium to have received a liberal education.
studis eruditum esse to have received a liberal education.
litteras scire

114 For the use of adverbs to modify adjectives and other adverbs vid. Nägelsbach Lat. Stil. p. 278; cf. bene multi, bene mane, bene penitus (Verr. 2. 70. 169), impie ingratus (Tusc. 5. 2. 6) etc. Such combinations are especially frequent in Tacitus, Velleius, Seneca, and Quintilian. For latine by itself cf. Cic. Opt. Gen. 4 latine, id est pure et emendate, loqui. If the style is to be criticised, adverbs can be added—e.g. bene, perbene, pessime, eleganter, etc., cf. vii. 7.

115 Not solida, which means properly entire, massive—e.g. marmor solidum, crateres auro solidi, then metaph. e.g.—solida laus, utilitas.
litterae interiores et reconditae, artes reconditae

sunt in illo, ut in homine Romano, multae litterae (De Sen. 4. 12)
litteris leviter imbutum or tinctum esse
omni vita atque victu excultum atque expolitum esse (Brut. 25. 95)

omnis cultus et humanitatis expertem esse

ab omni cultu et humanitate longe abesse (B. G. 1. 1. 3)
homines, gentem a fera agrestique vita ad humanum cultum civilemque deducere (De Or. 1. 8. 33)

4. Education—Instruction—School—Profession

liberaliter, ingenue, bene educari
severa disciplina contineri
aliquem ad humanitatem informare or instituere
mores alicuius corrigere
in viam reducere aliquem
in viam redire
litteras discere ab aliquo
institui or erudiri ab aliquo
disciplina alicuius uti, magistro aliquo uti
e disciplina alicuius profectum esse
puerum alicui erudiendum or in disciplinam tradere
operam dare or simply se dare alicui, se tradere in disciplinam alicuius, se conferre, se applicare ad aliquem
multum esse cum aliquo (Fam. 16. 21)
ludus (discendi or litterarum)
schola
scholam frequentare
disciplina (institutio) puerilis (not liberorum)
pueros elementa (prima) docere
primis litterarum elementis imbui
doctrinae, quibus aetas puerilis impertiri solet (Nep. Att. 1. 2)
artes, quibus aetas puerilis ad humanitatem informari solet
erudire alicuem artibus, litteris (but erudire alicuem in iure civili, in re militari)
natum, factum esse ad aliiquid (faciendum)

profound scientific education.
for a Roman he is decidedly well educated.
to have received a superficial education.
to have attained to a high degree of culture.
to be quite uncivilised.
to be quite uncivilised.
to civilise men, a nation.
to receive a liberal education.
to be brought up under strict discipline.
to teach a person refinement.
to improve a person.
to bring a person back to the right way.
to return to the right way.
to be educated by some one.
to receive instruction from some one.
to receive instruction from some one.
to be brought up in some one's school.
to entrust a child to the tuition of...
to become a pupil, disciple of some one.
to enjoy close intercourse with... (of master and pupil).
an elementary school.
a school for higher education.
to go to a school.
to teach children the rudiments.
to receive the first elements of a liberal education.
the usual subjects taught to boys.
the usual subjects taught to boys.
to teach some one letters.
to be born for a thing, endowed by nature for it.

116 Not incultum esse, which refers only to external appearance.
adversante et repugnante natura or invitā Minervā (ut aiunt) aliquid facere (Off. 1. 31. 110)
crassa or pingui Minerva (proverb.)
calcaria alicui adhibere, admove; stimulus alicui admove
frenos adhibere alicui
bona indole (always in sing.) praeditum esse
ingenio valere
summo ingenio praeditum esse
in aliqua re progressus facere, proficere, progredi
aliquid efficere, consequi in aliqua re (De Or. 1. 33. 152)
adulescens alios bene de se sperare iubet; bonam spem ostendit or alii de adulescente bene sperare possunt
adulescens bonae (egregiae) spei magna est exspectatio ingenii tui
desudare in schola or umbraculis 117
genus vitae (vivendi) or aetatis degendae
deligere
viam vitae ingredi (Flacc. 42. 105)
philosophiam, medicinam profiteri
se philosophum, medicum (esse) profiteri
qui ista profitentur

Example—Pattern—Precedent

exemplum clarum, praeclarum
exemplum luculentum
exemplum illustre
exemplum magnum, grande
exemplum afferre
exemplo uti
aliquem (aliquid) exempli causa 121 ponere, profferre, nominare, commemorare

117 Cf. umbra, umbracula (-orum), and umbratilis (vid. vii. 2, vita umbratilis), used of the retired life of a savant as opposed to sol, lux fori or forensis. Cf. De Legg. 3. 6. 14 Phalereus ille Demetrius mirabiliter doctrinam ex umbraculis eruditorum otioque non modo in solem atque in pulverem sed in ipsum discrimin aciemque produxit.
118 Transcriber's Note: The original footnote indeed has sol, lux ori. But that is wrong as can be seen from the French edition using sol, lux fori.
119 The locus classicus on the choice of a profession is De Officiis 1. 32. 115-122.
120 Not bonum exemplum, which means an example morally good for us to follow.
121 "For example" must not be translated by exempli causa, which is only used in complete sentences with such verbs as ponere, afferre, profferre, nominare. verbi causa (gratia) = "for instance," "we will
aliquid exemplis probare, comprobare, confirmare

aliquid exemplis ostendere
exempla petere, repetere a rerum gestarum memoria or historiarum (annalium, rerum gestarum) monumentis
exempla a rerum Romanarum (Graecarum) memoria petita
multa exempla in unum (locum) colligere
ex infinita exemplorum copia unum (paucam) sumere, decerpere (eligere)
a Socrate exemplum virtutis petere, repetere similitudines afferre
auctore aliquo uti ad aliquid
auctorem aliquem habere alicuius rei auctoritatem alicuius sequi
auctoritas et exemplum (Balb. 13. 31)
sibi exemplum alicuius proponere ad imitandum or simply sibi aliquem ad imitandum proponere

sibi exemplum sumere ex aliquo or exemplum capere de aliquo
ad exemplum alicuius se conformare

exemplum edere, prodere
exemplo esse
exemplum in aliquo or in aliquem statuere

exemplum (severitatis) edere in aliquo (Q. Fr. 1. 2. 2. 5)
bene (male) praecepere alicui praecipiendi rationem delabi (Q. Fr. 1. 1. 6. 18)
aliquid in animo haeret, penitus insedit or infixum est
aliquid animo mentique penitus mandare (Catil. 1. 11. 27)
demittere aliquid in pectus or in pectus animumque suum
hoc verbum alte descendit in pectus alicuius

a thing is deeply impressed on the mind.
to style an exemplar punishment on some one.
to inculcate good (bad) principles.
to give advice, directions, about a matter.
to adopt a didactic tone.
to impress a thing on one's memory, mind.
to take a thing to heart.
what he said made a deep impression on...

6. Philosophy

se conferre ad philosophiam, ad philosophiae or sapientiae studium (Fam. 4. 3. 4)
animum appellare or se applicare ad philosophiam
to devote oneself to philosophy.
to apply oneself to the study of philosophy.
say," usually refers to a single expression, e.g. quid dicis igitur? miserum fuisse verbi causa M. Crassum? (Tusc. 1. 4. 12). Often examples are introduced by such words as ut, velut, in his, etc., e.g. bestiae quae gignuntur in terra, veluti crocodili (N. D. 2. 48. 124).
philosophiae (sapientiae) studio teneri (Acad. 1. 2. 4) to be enamoured of philosophy.
in portum philosophiae confugere to take refuge in philosophy.
in sinum philosophiae compelli to be driven into the arms of philosophy.
philosophia (neglecta) iacet (vid. sect. VII. 1, note iacère...) philosophy is neglected, at low ebb.
philosophiam latinis litteris illustrare (Acad. 1. 1. 3) to write expositions of philosophy in Latin.
Ciceronis de philosophia libri Cicero's philosophical writings.
decreta, inventa philosophorum the tenets, dogmas of philosophers.
qua in philosophia tractantur philosophical subjects.
praecepta philosophorum (penitus) percepta habere to be well acquainted with the views of philosophers.
illae sententiae evanuerunt those views are out of date.
illae sententiae iam pridem explosae et eiectae sunt (Fin. 5. 8. 23) those ideas have long ago been given up.
scola, disciplina, familia; secta a sect, school of thought.
sectam alicuius sequi (Brut. 31. 120) to be a follower, disciple of some one.
disciplinam alicuius profiteri to be a follower, disciple of some one.
qui sunt a Platone or a Platonis disciplina; qui profecti sunt a Platone; Platonici disciples of Plato, Platonists.
Solo, unus de septem (illis) Solon, one of the seven sages.
Pythagorae doctrina longe lateque fluxit Pythagoras' principles were widely propagated.
scholas habere, explicare (Fin. 2. 1. 1) to give lectures.
scholis interesse to attend lectures.
tradere (aliquid de aliqua re) to teach.
audire Platonem, auditorem esse Platonis to attend Plato's lectures.

7. The Parts of Philosophy

physica ( -orum) (Or. 34. 119); philosophy naturalis physics; natural philosophy.
dialectica ( -ae or -orum) (pure Latin disserendi ratio et scientiā) logic, dialectic.
disserendi praecerta tradere to teach logic.
disserendi elegantia logical minuteness, precision.
disserendi subtilitas (De Or. 1. 1. 68) dialectical nicety.
disserendi spineae (Fin. 4. 28. 79) subtleties of logic; dilemmas.
disserendi peritus et artifex an accomplished dialectician.
homo in dialecticis versatissimus an accomplished dialectician.
disserendi artem nullam habere to know nothing of logic.
dialecticis ne imbutum 123 quidem esse to be ignorant of even the elements of logic.
ratione, eleganter (opp. nulla ratione, ineleganter, confuse) disponere alicuand to arrange on strictly logical principles.

122 Cf. Acad. 1. 5. 19 philosophandi ratio triplex; una de vita et moribus, altera de natura et rebus occultis, tertia de disserendo.
123 imbuere is properly to give the first touch to, tinge, bathe, e.g. gladii sanguine imbuti. Metaph. it = (1) to fill with, e.g. religione, pietate, superstitione, crudelitate; (2) to teach, initiate, e.g. animum honestis artibus, and is used especially of a superficial knowledge.
philosophia, quae est de vita et moribus
( Acad. 1. 5. 19)
philosophia, in qua de bonis rebus et malis,
deque hominum vita et moribus disputatur
philosophia, quae in rerum contemplatione
versatur, or quae artis praeceptis
continetur
philosophia, quae in actione versatur
omnes philosophiae loci

moral science; ethics.
moral science; ethics.
theoretical, speculative philosophy.
practical philosophy.
the whole domain of philosophy.

8. System—Method—Principles

ratio; disciplina, ratio et disciplina; ars
ad artem redigere aliquid
ad rationem, ad artem et praecepta revocare
aliquid (De Or. 1. 41)
arte conclusum esse
ratio et doctrina
artificio et via tradere aliquid
artificiose redigere aliquid
ad rationis praecepta accommodare aliquid
totam rationem evertere (pass. iacet tota
ratio)
ratione et via, via et ratione progredi,
disputare (Or. 33. 116)
novam rationem ingredi
a certa ratione proficisci
a falsis principiis proficisci
ad philosophorum or philosophandi rationes
revocare aliquid
perpetuitas et constantia (Tusc. 5. 10. 31)

system.
to systematise.
to have been reduced to a system.
 systematic, methodical knowledge.
to give a scientific explanation of a thing.
to treat with scientific exactness; to classify.
to treat with scientific exactness; to classify.
to upset the whole system.
to proceed, carry on a discussion logically.
to enter on a new method.
to be based on a sound principle.
to start from false premises.
to deal with a subject on scientific principles.
 logical consistency.

9. Species—Definition—Classification—Connection

partes 125 generibus subiectae sunt
genus universum in species certas partiri et
dividere (Or. 33. 117)
genere, non numero or magnitudine differre
spiniae partiendo et definiendi (Tusc. 5. 8. 22)
rem (res) definire
a definitione proficisci
involutae rei notitiam definiendo aperire (Or.

the species is subordinate the genus.
to analyse a general division into its specific
parts.
to differ qualitatively not quantitatively.
minute, captious subdivisions and
definitions.
to define a thing.
to start from a definition.
to make an obscure notion clear by means

125 Cf. Cic. De Or. 1. 42 for the definition. GENUS autem id est, quod sui similes communione quadam,
specie autem differentes, duas aut plures completitur partes. PARTES autem sunt, quae generibus eis
ex quibus manant subiciuntur; omniaque quae sunt vel genera vel partium nomina, definitionibus,
quam vim habeant, est exprimendum. est enim DEFINITIO rerum earum, quae sunt eius rei propriae,
quam defineire volumus, brevis et circumscripta quaedam explicatio.
33. 116)
sub metum subiectum esse
constituere, quid et quale sit, de quo disputetur
in ordinem redigere aliquid
conexus et aptum esse inter se
cohaerere, coniunctum esse cum aliqua re
arte (artissime) coniunctum esse
apté (aptissime) cohaerere
continuatio seriesque rerum, ut alia ex alia
nexa et omnes inter se aptae colligataeque
sint (N. D. 1. 4. 9)
diffusum, dissipatum esse
confusum, perturbatum esse
rem dissolutam conglutinare, coagmentare
of definition.

33. 116) to be comprised under the term "fear."

33. 116) to determine the nature and constitution of

33. 116) the subject under discussion.

33. 116) to systematise, classify a thing.

33. 116) to be closely connected with each other.

33. 116) to be closely connected with a thing.

33. 116) to be very intimately related.

33. 116) to be very intimately related.

33. 116) systematic succession, concatenation.

to have no coherence, connection.

to be confused.

to reunite disconnected elements.

10. Proof—Refutation

argumentum firmum, magnum
argumentum afferre
argumentum immortalitatis afferre (not pro)
argumentum afferre, quo animos immortales
esse demonstratur
argumento huic rei est, quod
aliquid planum facere (Ad Herenn. 2. 5)
aliquid aliqui probare (or c. Acc. c. Inf.)
argumentis confirmare, comprobare,
evincere aliquid (or c. Acc. c. Inf.)
argumentum ducere, sumere ex aliqua re or
petere ab aliqua re
argumentum premere (not urgere)
loci (tópoi) argumentorum (De Or. 2. 162)
argumenta refellere, confutare
rationem affere (Verr. 3. 85. 195)
a strong, striking proof.
to bring forward a proof.
to quote an argument in favour of
immortality.
to bring forward a proof of the immortality
of the soul.
a proof of this is that...
to demonstrate, make a thing clear.
to prove one's point to a person's
satisfaction.
to prove a thing indisputably.
to derive an argument from a thing.
to persist in an argument, press a point.
the points on which proofs are based; the
grounds of proof.
to refute arguments.
to bring forward an argument (based on
common-sense).

11. Conclusion—Hypothesis—Inference

concludere, colligere, efficere, cogere ex
aliqua re
acute, subtiliter concludere
ratio or rationis conclusio efficit
to draw a conclusion from a thing.
to draw a subtle inference.
the conclusion proves that...

126 argumentum = a proof resting on facts; ratio = an argument drawn from the general
reasonableness of the proposition.

127 argumentum = a proof resting on facts; ratio = an argument drawn from the general
reasonableness of the proposition.
ratiocinatio, ratio
prima 128 (superiora); consequentia (Fin. 4. 19. 54)
conclusiuncula fallax or captio
posuit est a nobis primum (c. Acc. c. Inf.)
hoc posito
hoc probato consequens est
sequitur (not ex quo seq.) ut
ex quo, unde, hinc efficitur ut

the syllogism; reasoning.
premises; consequences.
a fallacious argument; sophism.
we start by presupposing that...
on this supposition, hypothesis.
it follows from what we have shown.
it follows from this that...
it follows from this that...

12. Debate—Controversy

disputatio, quaestio
subtiliter disputare
in utramque partem, in contrarias partes
in nullam partem disputare

systematic, scientific discussion.
to discuss, investigate a subject scientifically.
to thoroughly discuss.
to discuss both sides of a question.
to say nothing either for or against an argument.
I have nothing to say against it.
to be dogmatic; positive.
to object, to adduce in contradiction.
to grant, admit a thing.
to assume a thing.
to insist on a point.
to maintain one's assertion, prove oneself right.
to be at variance with.
to be at variance with.
to make a thing the subject of controversy.
to be contested, become the subject of debate.
to leave a point undecided.
to maintain a controversy with some one.
it is a debated point whether... or...
the point at issue.
to put an end to, settle a dispute.
to decide a debated question.
to come to an understanding with a person.
I have a point to discuss with you.
indisputably; incontestably.

128 In a syllogism the technical term for the major premise is propositio or propositio major; for the minor, propositio minor; for the conclusion, conclusio.
129 disputare = to discuss, considering the arguments pro and con, used of a number of people with different opinions. disserere de aliqua re = to discourse on a matter for the benefit of those present; but in both cases the substantive is disputatio.
hoc est a (pro) me
res ipsa docet
res ipsa (pro me apud te) loquitur
res confecta est

this goes to prove what I say.
the very facts of the case show this.
the matter speaks for itself.
the question is settled, finished.

13. Agreement—Contradiction

consentire, idem sentire cum aliquo
dissentire, dissidere ab or cum aliquo
omnes (uno ore) in hac re consentiunt
una et consentiens vox est
una voce; uno ore
uno, communi, summo or omnium consensu
(re concinere, verbis discrepare
hoc convènit inter nos
hoc mihi tecum convènit (Att. 6. 1. 14)
qui convenit?

summa est virorum doctissimorum consensio
constantia (opp. inconstantia) (Tusc. 5. 11. 32)
inter se pugnare or repugnare
secum pugnare (without sibi); sibi repugnare
(a se dissidere or sibi non constare (of
persons)
pugnantia loqui (Tusc. 1. 7. 13)
dicere contra aliquem or aliquid (not
contradicere alicui)

re concinere, verbis discrepare
to agree in fact but not in word.
we have agreed on this point.
I agree with you there.
how is this consistent? how are we to
reconcile this...?
the learned men are most unanimous in...

constantia (opp. inconstantia) (Tusc. 5. 11. 32)
to be mutually contradictory.
to contradict oneself, be inconsistent.
to make contradictory, inconsistent statements.
to contradict some one.

14. Particular Sciences (History—Mythology—Chronology—Geography—
Mathematics—Natural Science—Astronomy)

res Romanae
res gestae Romanorum
historia
historia Romana or rerum Romanarum
historia

Roman history (i.e. the events in it).
Roman history (i.e. the events in it).
history (as a science).
Roman history (i.e. the exposition,
representation of it by writers).

130 But res Romana = the Roman power, Rome.
131 historia has several different senses. (1) The narration, exposition of the facts (res gestae, res), cf.
erum exemplum, historic precedent; res factura, historic fact. (2) Historical composition, e.g. historiam
scribere, historia graeca = either a history written in Greek or a history of Greece (rerum graecarum
historia); historia latina, history written in Latin; historia romana or rerum romanarum historia = a
history of Rome. (3) A place famous in history, e.g. quacunque ingredimur, in aliqua historia pedem
memoria rerum Romanarum
historiam (-as) scribere
res populi Romani perscribere
rerum auctor (as authority)
evolvere historias, litterarum (veterum annalium) monumenta
memoriae traditum est, memoriae (memoria) proditum est (without nobis)
tradunt, dicunt, ferunt
acceptimus
historiae prodiderunt (without nobis)
apud rerum scriptores scriptum videmus, scriptum est
duplex est memoria de aliqua re rerum veterum memoria
memoria vetus (Or. 34. 120)
veterum annales
veterum annalium monumenta
antiquitas memoria
recentioris aetatis memoria
memoria huius aetatis (horum temporum)

nostre memoria (Cael. 18. 43)

omnis memoria, omnis memoria aetatum, temporum, civitatum or omnium rerum, gentium, temporum, saeculorum memoria
memoriam annalium or temporum replicare

aetas heroica (Tusc. 5. 3. 7)
tempora heroica (N. D. 3. 21. 54)

repere ab ultima (extrema, prisca) antiquitate (vetustate), ab heroicis temporibus
ut a fabulis ad facta veniamus

historicorum fide contestata memoria historiae, rerum fides
narrare aliquid ad fidem historiae

res historiae fide comprobata

Roman history (as tradition).
to write a history.
to write a history of Rome.
an historian.
an historian.
to study historical records, read history.
tradition, history tells us.
they say; it is commonly said.
we know; we have been told.
history has handed down to us.
we read in history.
a twofold tradition prevails on this subject.
ancient history.
ancient history.
ancient history.
ancient history.
modern history.
the history of our own times; contemporary history.
the history of our own times; contemporary history.
universal history.
to consult history.
the mythical period, the heroic age.
the mythical period, the heroic age.
mythology.
to go back to the remote ages.
to pass from myth to history.
historic times.
historic truth.
to give a veracious and historic account of a thing.
an acknowledged historical fact.

ponimus. In the plural historiae means specially histories, anecdotes (narratiunculae), memoirs, e.g. Taciti historiae.

132 historicus means an erudite student of history, one engaged on historical research. As an adjective its use in Cicero is limited, being only used when opposed to oratorius, e.g. genus historicum, historic style (Brut. 83. 286).

133 scimus, cognovimus (= we know by experience) are not used of historical knowledge.

134 heroicus only of time. herous = epic, e.g. versus herous (De Or. 3. 49. 191) = a dactylic hexameter; pes herous a dactyl; "epic" of other things is usually epicus, e.g. carmen epicum; poetae epicī, or epicī alone. For "heroic" of an action, cf. praeclarum atque divinum factum; factum illustre et gloriosum, etc.
incorrupta rerum fides [genuine historical truth.]
ad historiam (scribendam) se conferre or se applicare [to devote oneself to writing history.]
homo in historia diligens [a conscientious historian.]
memoriam rerum gestarum (rerum Romanarum) tenere [to be well versed in Roman history.]
domestica (externa) nosse [to be acquainted with the history of one's own land.]
temporum ratio, descriptio, ordo [chronology.]
temporum ordinem servare [to observe the chronological order of events.]
servare et notare tempora [to observe the chronological order of events.]
res temporum ordine servato narrare [to narrate events in the order of their occurrence.]
temporibus errare (Phil. 2. 9. 23) [to make a chronological mistake.]
ad temporum rationem aliquid revocare [to calculate the date of an event.]
diligentem esse in exquirendis temporibus [to be exact in calculating dates.]
terrarum or regionum descriptio (geographia) [geography.]
Africae situm paucis exponere [to give a brief exposition of the geography of Africa.]
regionum terrestrium aut maritimarum scientia [geographical knowledge.]
mathematica (-ae) or geometria (-ae), geometrica (-orum) (Tusc. 1. 24. 57) [mathematics.]
mathematicorum ratione concludere aliquid [to draw a mathematical conclusion.]
formas (not figuras) geometricas describere [to draw geometrical figures.]
se conferre ad naturae investigationem [to devote oneself to the study of a natural science.]
astrologia (pure Latin sidera, caelestia) [astronomy.]
spectator siderum, rerum caelestium or astrologus 135 [an astronomer.]
arithmetica 136 (-orum)
numeri (-orum) [arithmetic.]
bis bina quot sint non didicisse [to be absolutely ignorant of arithmetic.]

15. Art in General

artis opus; opus arte factum or perfectum [a work of art.]
opus summo artificio factum 137 [a master-piece of classical work.]
opus omnibus numeris absolutum [a master-piece of classical work.]
artem exercere [to follow an artistic profession, practise an art.]

135 It is only in later Latin after astrologus had acquired the meaning of astrologer, magician, that astronomus came to be used (= astronomer).
136 In Cicero always neut. plur., e.g. in arithmeticis satis versatus; later writers use the fem. sing. The pure Latin word is numeri, cf. De Fin. 1. 21. 72 an ille se, ut Plato, in musicis, geometria, numeris, astris contereret? So De Fin. 5. 29. 87 cur Plato Aegyptum peragravit, ut a sacerdotibus barbaris numeros et caelestia acciperet? Cf. Nägelsb. Lat. Stil. p. 46.
137 Transcriber’s Note: The original text has opus summo artificio factum. But that is wrong as can be seen from the French edition using opus summo artificio factum.
artem tradere, docere
artem profiteri
artium (liberalium) studium, or simply studium
artis praecepta, or also simply ars (artis, artium) intellegens, peritus
idiota, a layman
existimator (doctus, intellegens, acerrimus)
in existimantium arbitrium venire (Brut. 24. 92)
iudicium facere
sensum, iudicium habere
elegantia in illo est
iudicium subtile, elegans, exquisitum, intellegens
iudicium acuere
abhorre ab artibus (opp. delectari artibus)
veritatem imitari (Div. 1. 13. 23)
in omni re vincit imitationem veritas
aliquid ad verum exprimere
morum ac vitae imitatio
aliquid e vita ductum est

16. Poetry—Music—Painting—Sculpture

poema condere, facere, componere
versus facere, scribere
carmina, versus fundere (De Or. 3. 50)
carmen epicum
poeta epicus
poesis scaenica
poeta scaenicus
scriptor tragœdiarum, comoediarum, also
(poeta) tragicus, comicus
scriptor fabularum
divino quodam instinctu concitari, ferri (Div. 1. 31. 66)
divino quodam spiritu infatius or tactus
carmen, versum agere
carmen recitare

138 idiota = properly uninitiated, not the same as rudis, indoctus, imperitus.
139 veritas means not merely truth (opp. mendacium), but also reality (opp. opinio, imitatio). Thus we often find the combination res et veritas ipsa (Tusc. 5. 5. 13), natura rerum et ipsa veritas.
140 tragicus, comicus as adjectives = occurring in tragedy, comedy—e.g. Orestes tragicus; senes comici. Comic in the ordinary sense = ridiculus, c.f. homo ridiculus.
141 Not fabulator, which = a gossip, teller of anecdotes.
carmen pronuntiare

to recite a piece of verse (without gestures).
carmen inconditum

to recite a piece of verse (without gestures).
se conferre ad poesis studium

to devote oneself to poetry.
poetica laude florere

to be distinguished as a poet.
poesis genus ad Romanos transferre

to transplant to Rome one of the branches of poesy.
alicuius laudes versibus persequi

to sing the praises of some one (not canere aliquem)
alicuius laudes (virtutes) canere

to sing the praises of some one (not canere aliquem)
alicuius res gestas versibus ornare, celebrare

to celebrate some one's exploits in song.
('') ait Homerus

as Homer sings (not canit).
numerus poetice vinctus

poetical rhythm.
artem musicam 142

to learn, study music.
discere, tractare

instrumental music.
nervorum et tibiarum cantus

vocal and instrumental music.
vocum et fidium (nervorum) cantus

to teach some one to play a stringed instrument.
docere aliquem fidibus

to learn to play a stringed instrument.
fidibus canere

to play the lyre.
pellere nervos in fidibus

to strike the strings of the lyre.
tibias inflare

to play the flute.
tibiis or tibiā canere

ad tibiam or ad tibicinem canere (homo) symphoniacus

the orchestra is playing.
symphōnīa canit (Verr. 3. 44. 105)

the melody.
acroāma

the art of painting.
modi (De Or. 1. 42. 187)

the art of sculpture.
modos facere

to have a rhythmical cadence.
numerus, numeri

signa et tabulae (pictae)

statuae 144 inscribere (Verr. 2. 69. 167)

the sculpture.

17. The Drama

ars ludicra (De Or. 2. 20. 84)

the dramatic art.
 fabula, ludus scaenicus

the piece; the play.
 argumentum

the plot of the piece.
 actio

the treatment of the piece.
 actus

an act.
 fabulam docere (διδάσκειν) (of the writer)

to get a piece played, rehearse it.

142 musica (-orum) is also used for music, cf. in musicis se conterere.
143 acroāma = originally anything performed to give pleasure, then a performer. The Greeks applied the term to music; the Romans used it of any professional performer who entertained guests while at table.
144 statua is not used of statues of the gods, but signum, simulacrum.
(opp. *fabulam discere*—to study a piece, of the actor)

*fabulam agere* to act a play (said of the actors).

*fabulam edere* to bring out a play, put it on the stage (used of the man who finds the money).

*fabulam dare* to produce a play (of the writer).

*in scaenam producere aliquem* to introduce a character on the stage.

*in scaenam prodire* to come upon the stage.

*in scaenam redire* to reappear on the stage.

*de scaena decedere* to retire from the stage.

*in scaenam aliquid inducere* to bring a thing upon the stage.

*familia, grex, caterva histrionum* a theatrical company.

*dominus gregis* the manager.

*in scaenam aliquid inducere* to bring a thing upon the stage.

*familia, grex, caterva histrionum* a theatrical company.

*dominus gregis* the manager.

*in scaenam aliquid inducere* to bring a thing upon the stage.

*familia, grex, caterva histrionum* a theatrical company.

*dominus gregis* the manager.

*in scaenam aliquid inducere* to bring a thing upon the stage.

*familia, grex, caterva histrionum* a theatrical company.

*dominus gregis* the manager.

*theatrum* the playhouse.

*theatra reclamant* the spectators protest.

*populum facilem, aequum habere* to have an appreciative audience.

*plaudere* (not *applaudere*) to applaud, clap a person.

*plausum dare* (alicui) to applaud, clap a person.

*clamores (coronae) facere, excitare* to elicit loud applause.

*saepius revocatur* (Liv. 7. 2. 9) he is encored several times.

*fabulam exigere* (Ter. Andr. Pol.) to hiss a play.

*a piece is a failure, falls flat.

*histrionem exsibilare, explodere, eicere, exigere* to hiss an actor off the stage.

*histrioni acclamare* to interrupt an actor by hooting him.

*partes agere alicuius* to play the part of some one.

*agere servum, lenonem* to act the rôle of a slave, pander.

*actor primarum* (secundarum, tertiarum) the actor who plays the leading part.

*partium* the Antigone.

*tragedia or fabula Antigona* (not *Antigona trag. or fab.*) in Sophocles' Ajax.

*Sophoclem in Aiace* the Chorus in Tragedy.

*carmen chori, canticum* a choric ode in a tragedy.

*loci melici* the lyric portions of a tragedy.

*diverbium* stage dialogue.

*canticum* a choric ode.

*ludi circenses, scaenici* performances in the circus; theatrical performances.

*ludos apparare* to institute games.

---

145 *theatrum* = (1) the playhouse, theatre; (2) the audience, house. It is used metaphorically for the sphere of activity, theatre, scene, e.g. *theatrum magnum habet ista provincia* (Cic.); *nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia majus* (ibid.)

146 Livy is the first writer who uses *acclamare* in a good sense.

147 Also used metaphorically of the part played in life, e.g. *partes suscipere, sustinere, dare, tribuere, defendere, tueri.* Similarly *persona* (properly mask) is used in several phrases, e.g. *personam alicuius agere, ferre, tenere; personam suscipere or induere; personam tueri* (Phil. 8. 10); *personam alicui imponere* (Sull. 3. 8). *persona* thus got the meaning of personality, individuality, character, and lastly in a concrete sense a personage of distinction. N.B.—It never represents our “person,” cf. many persons were present, *multi (homines) aderant.*
ludos facere, edere (Iovi)  
munus gladiatorium edere, dare (or simply munus edere, dare)  
facere gladiatores dare  
familia 148 gladiatoria (Sest. 64. 134)  
lfidus gladiatorius  
attoribus (Att. 2. 19. 3)  
celbratias ludorum  
magnificentia ludorum  
ludi apparatissimi  
ludi Olympia (not ludi Olympici), Pythia  
Olympia vincere (Ολύμπια νικαν)  
ludi gymnici  
certamina gymnica  
stadium currere (Off. 3. 10. 42)

VIII. Speech and Writing

1. Speech in General

ars dicendi  
ad dicendum se conferre  
dicendi praeccepta tradere  
rhetor, dicendi magister  
facultas dicendi  
natum, factum esse ad dicendum  
facilem et expeditum esse ad dicendum (Brut. 48. 180)  
rudem, tironem ac rudem (opp. exercitatum) esse in dicendo  
disertum esse (De Or. 1. 21. 94)  
eloquentem esse (De Or. 1. 21. 94)  
eloquentia valere  
dicendi arte florere  
eloquentiae laude florere  
vis dicendi  
multum dicendo valere, posse  
eloquentiae principatum tenere  
primum or principem inter oratores locum obtinere  
oratorum principem esse

to give public games in honour of Jupiter.  
to revive public games.  
to give a gladiatorial show.  
to give a gladiatorial show.  
a band, troupe of gladiators under the management of a lanista.  
a school for gladiators.  
at the gladiatorial games.  
crowded games.  
sumptuous public games.  
sumptuous public games.  
to win a prize at the Olympian games.  
gymnastic contests.  
gymnastic contests.  
to run a foot-race.  
to be devoted oneself to oratory.  
to teach rhetoric.  
a teacher of rhetoric.  
oratorical talent.  
to be a born orator.  
to be a ready, fluent speaker.  
to be an inexperienced speaker.  
to be fluent.  
to be a capable, finished speaker.  
to be very eloquent.  
to be very eloquent.  
to be a distinguished orator.  
oratorical power.  
to have great weight as a speaker.  
to be considered the foremost orator.  
to be considered the foremost orator.

148 Hence familiam ducere, metaphorically to be at the head of a movement, to play the leading part, e.g. in iure civil (Cic.) For other phrases drawn from the wrestling-school vid. ix. 6.

149 Note the way in which the Latin language prefers a concrete expression in the plural to represent our abstract "rhetoric," cf. musica (-orum), astra, numeri, soni = music, astronomy, arithmetic, acoustics (vid. vii. 14).
orationem conficere  
orationem commentari (Fam. 16. 26) 
oratio meditata (Plin. 26. 3. 7)  
subito, ex tempore (opp. ex praeparato) dicere  
oratio subita  
oratio perpetua  
oratio accurata<sup>150</sup> et polita  
oratio composita  
contentio (opp. sermo) (Off. 2. 48)  
copiose dicere  
ornate dicere  
libere dicere (Verr. 2. 72. 176)  
plane, aperte dicere  
perspicue, diserte dicere  
missis ambagibus dicere  
accommodate ad persuadendum dicere  
agreddi ad dicendum<sup>151</sup>  

verba facere apud<sup>152</sup> populum, in contione  
in contionem (in rostra) escendere<sup>153</sup> (only of Romans)  
orationem habere (Tusc. 5. 33. 94)  
initium dicendi facere  
finem dicendi facere  
perorare (1) to make one's peroration; (2) to deliver the closing speech (in a case where several speeches have been made).  

animos audientium permovere, inflammare  
animos tenere  
audientiam sibi (orationi) facere  
solutum et expeditum esse ad dicendum  
lingua promptum esse  
celeritas in respondendo  
bonis lateribus<sup>154</sup> esse  
linguae solutio

2. Style—Expression

genus dicendi (scribendi); oratio<sup>155</sup> style.
genus dicendi grave or grande, medium, tenue\(^\text{156}\) (cf. Or. 5. 20; 6. 21) elevated, moderate, plain style.
fusum orationis genus a running style.
inconditum dicendi genus (Brut. 69. 242) a rough, unpolished style.
inflatum orationis genus a bombastic style.
oratione altius exagerata a bombastic style.
elatio atque altitudo orationis the exalted strain of the speech.
exsurgere altius or incitatius ferri to take a higher tone (especially of poets and orators).
magnifice loqui, dicere (1) to speak vehemently, passionately; (2) to speak pompously, boastfully.
magniloquentia, granditas verborum pathos; passion.
tragoediae tragic pathos.
expedita et facile currens oratio an easy, fluent style.
orationis flow of oratory.
siccitas, sanitas orationis the plain style.
verborum tenuitias, oratio subtilis the plain style.
oratione exilis, ieiuna, arida, exsanguis the dry, lifeless style.
omnatus orationis, verborum well-chosen language, grace of style.
eleganta orationis well-chosen language.
oratio pura, pura et emendata pure, correct language.
integritas, sinceritas orationis (not puritas) purity of style.
oratio inquinata\(^\text{158}\) (De Opt. Gen. Or. 3. 7) incorrect language.
orationes Catonis antiquitatem redolent there is a flavour of Atticism about his discourse.
orationibus ipsae Athenae redolent Cato's speeches sound archaic.
ex illius orationibus there is a flavour of Atticism about his discourse.
prose.
umerus orationem astringere, vincire to make a speech rhythmical.
lumina, flores dicendi (De Or. 3. 25. 96) flowers of rhetoric; embellishments of style.
sententias (verbis) explicare, aperire to explain one's sentiments.
sententiae reconditae ex exquisitae profound sentiments.
ubertas (not divitia) et copia orationis richness of ideas.
tebritis or copia (opp. inopia) sententiarum rich in ideas.
creber (opp. sententiis inaniis)

\(^{155}\) Not stiulus, which means the writing instrument, the stylus, hence the expression stilum vertere (Verr. 2. 3. 41), to erase what has been written. Metaphorically it denotes—(1) the action of writing, e.g. stilus optimus est et praestantissimus dicendi effector et magister; (2) the manner of writing, mode of composition, e.g. unus enim sonus est totius orationis et idem stilus.

\(^{156}\) Speeches belong according to their subject-matter to genus deliberativum (συμβουλευτικών), genus iudicale (δικανικών), or genus demonstrativum (ἐπιδεικτικών), cf. Cic. de Inv. 1. 5. 7; Arist. Rhet. bk. iii.

\(^{157}\) On the other hand, oratio fluid (De Or. 3. 49. 190) = the language has no rhythm.

\(^{158}\) Not impura, which means unchaste, obscene.
adumbrare aliquid (Or. 14. 43)
exprimere aliquid verbis or oratione (vid. sect. VI. 3, note adumbrare...)
exponere aliquid or de aliqua re
sententiae inter se nexae
perpetuitas verborum
contextus orationis (not nexus, conexus sententiarum)
ratio sententiarum
ratio, qua sententiae inter se excipiunt.
vitam alicuius exponere
vitam alicuius depingere
de ingenis moribusque alicuius exponere
summo colore alicuius illustrare
ante oculos ponere alicuius
oculis or sub oculos, sub aspectum subicere alicuius
rerum sub aspectum paene subiectio (De Or. 3. 53. 202)
perlustrare, lustrare oculis alicuius
sic exponere aliquid, quasi agatur res (non quasi narretur)
aliquem disputantem facere, inducere, fingere (est aliquid apud aliquem disputans)
in uno conspectu ponere alicuius
sub unum aspectum subicere alicuius
in brevi conspectu ponere alicuius
uno conspectu videre alicuius
breviter tangere, attingere alicuius
strictim, leviter tangere, attingere,
perstringere alicuius
quasi praeteriens, in transitu attingere alicuius
res summas attingere
summatim alicuius exponere
multa verba facere
multum, nimium esse (in aliqua re) (De Or. 2. 4. 17)
pluribus verbis, copiosius explicare, persequi alicuius
fusius, uberius, copiosius disputare, dicere de aliqua re
breviter, paucius explicare alicuius
to roughly sketch a thing.
to express clearly, make a lifelike representation of a thing.
to give an account of a thing (either orally or in writing).
the connection.
the connection.
the connection.
the connection of thought.
the connection of thought.
to give an account of a man's life.
to make a sketch of a man's life.
to make a character-sketch of a person.
to depict a thing in lively colours.
to bring a thing vividly before the eyes.
to represent a thing vividly.
to scrutinise, examine closely.
to represent a thing dramatically.
to introduce a person (into a dialogue) discoursing on...
to give a general idea of a thing.
to give a general idea of a thing.
to make a short survey of a thing.
to have a general idea of a thing.
to touch briefly on a thing.
to make a cursory mention of a thing; to mention by the way (not obiter or in transcursu).
to make a cursory mention of a thing; to mention by the way (not obiter or in transcursu).
to dwell only on the main points.
to dwell only on the main points.
to go deeply into a matter, discuss it fully.
to go deeply into a matter, discuss it fully.
to give a full, detailed account of a thing.
to speak at great length on a subject, discuss very fully.
to explain a matter briefly, in a few words.

Not dives which Cicero uses only absolutely and almost always of persons, cf. however animus hominis dives (Parad. 6. 44), divitior mihi et affluentior videtur esse vera amicitia (De Am. 16. 58).
persequi is often used in the meaning to expound, treat of either orally or in writing, e.g. alicuius vitam, alicuius laudes versibus, res Hannibalis.
rem paucis absolvere (Sall. Iug. 17. 2)
rebus ipsis par est oratio
rebus verba respondent
copiam quam potui persecutus sum
verbis non omnia exsequi posse
in medium proferre aliquid
in medio ponere (proponere)
silentio praeterire (not praetermittere)
aliquid
significare aliquem or aliquid
significatione appellare aliquid
describern aliquid (Cael. 20. 50)
leviter significare aliquid
ordine narrare, quomodo res gesta sit
dicendo ornare aliquid
rhetorice, tragice ornare aliquid (Brut. 11. 43)
digressus, digressio, egressio
quod orandi causa additum est
includere in orationem aliquid
inserere orationi aliquid
interponere aliquid (De Am. 1. 3)
dicendo augere, amplificare aliquid (opp. dicendo extenuare aliquid)
in maius ferre, in maius extollere aliquid
in maius accipere aliquid
digredi (a proposito) (De Or. 2. 77. 311)
studio alicuius rei provectus sum
longe, alte (longius, altius) repetere (either absolute or ab aliqua re)
oratio longius repetita (De Or. 3. 24. 91)
accedere ad cotidiani sermonis genus
ad vulgarem sensum or ad communem opinionem orationem accommodare (Off. 2. 10. 35)

3. Delivery—Voice

actio (Brut. 38)
pronuntiatio c. Gen.
actio paulum claudicat
haerere, haesitare (Catil. 2. 6. 13)
delivery.
articstic delivery; declamation.
the delivery is rather halting, poor.
to stop short, hesitate.

161 Not declamatio which = an oratorical exercise. Distinguish pronuntiare (De Or. 1. 59. 251), to declaim a thing according to the rules of rhetoric; and declamare = to go through rhetorical exercises as a practice in speaking.
162 claudicare often metaph. of things which are unequal, weak, e.g. amicitia claudicat (Fin. 1. 69).
perturbari, permoveri
dehabere, dicere (opp. sine scripto, ex memoria)
interpellare aliquem (dicentem)
vocem summittere
contentio, remissio vocis
vocem intercludere (Just. 11. 8. 4)
nulla vox est ab eo audita
magna voce clamare
clamorem tollere (Liv. 3. 28)
gestum (always in the sing.) agere
to be nervous, embarrassed.
to read a speech.
to interrupt.
a strong, loud voice.
a deep, high, thin, moderate voice.
a melodious, ringing voice.
a gentle, subdued voice.
to speak, uttered a sound.
to lower one's voice.
raising, lowering the voice.
to prevent some one from speaking.
no sound passed his lips.
to shout at the top of one's voice.
to raise a shout, a cry.
to gesticulate.

4. Subject-Matter—Argument

non habeo argumentum scribendi
deest mihi argumentum ad scribendum (Att. 9. 7. 7)
non habeo, non est quod scribam
res (opp. verba) mihi suppetit
materia mihi crescit
res componere ac digerere
dispositio rerum (De Inv. 1. 7. 9)
materia rerum et copia uberrima
infinita et immensa materia
materiem ad ornatum praebere
id quod (mihi) propositum est
res proposita
id quod quaerimus (quaeritur)
institutum or id quod institui
a proposito aberrare, declinare, deflectere,
digredi, egredi
ad propositum reverti, redire
ad rem redire
sed redeat, unde aberravit oratio
sed ad id, unde digressi sumus, revertamur
verum ut ad id, unde digressa est oratio,
revertamur
mihi propositum est c. Inf. (or mihi proposui, ut)
ponere
I have nothing to write about.
I have nothing to write about.
I have nothing to write about.
I have abundance to say.
my subject grows as I write.
to arrange and divide the subject-matter.
the arrangement of the subject-matter.
abundance of material.
abundance of material.
to afford matter for elaboration, embellishment.
a theme, subject proposed for discussion.
a theme, subject proposed for discussion.
a theme, subject proposed for discussion.
a theme, subject proposed for discussion.
to digress from the point at issue.
to come back to the point.
to come back to the point.
but to return from the digression we have been making.
but to return from the digression we have been making.
the task I have put before myself is...
to propose, set a theme.

163 But to read a speech orationem legere (Brut. 51. 191); to read with expression, recitare (Phil. 10.2. 5).
ponere alicui, de quo disputet
tonere iubere, qua de re quis audire velit

(Fin. 2. 1. 1)

to set some one a theme for discussion.
to let those present fix any subject they like for discussion.

5. Question—Answer

quaestionem ponere, proponere
to propose a subject of debate, put a question.
to get a question submitted to one.
at this point the question arises.
the question now is...
the question at issue.

quaestionem poscere (Fin. 2. 1. 1)
faco loco existit quaestio, quaeritur

nunc id quaeritur, agitur

res, de qua nunc quaerimus, quaeritur

magna quaestio est (followed by an indirect question)

quaerendum esse mihi visum est
quaestionem solvere
quaestio ad exitum venit
ad interrogata respondere
bene interrogare

percontanti non deesse (De Or. 1. 21. 97)
responsum ab aliquo ferre, auferre
respondere in hanc sententiam

6. Humour—Earnest

ioco uti (Off. 1. 29. 103)
haec iocatus sum, per locum dixi
animo prompto esse ad iocandum
extra iocum, remoto ioco (Fam. 7. 11. 3)
facete dicere
facetiis uti, facetum esse
facete et commode dicere
breviter et commode dictum
facete dictum
arcessitum dictum (De Or. 2. 63. 256)
dicta dicere in aliquem
aspergere sales orationi (Or. 26. 87)

aliquid ad ridiculum convertere
(homo) ridiculus (Plaut. Stich. 1. 3. 21)
lepos in locando
iucunde esse (Deiot. 7. 19)
se dare iucunditati
sibi disamicere (opp. sibi placere)
ioca et seria agere

to make a joke.
I said it in jest.
to be humorously inclined.
joking apart.
to be witty.
to make witty remarks.
to indulge in apt witticisms.
a short, pointed witticism.
a witticism, bon mot.
a far-fetched joke.
to make jokes on a person.
to intersperse one's speech with humorous remarks.
to make a joke of a thing.
a wit; a joker.
humour.
to be in a good temper.
to let oneself be jovial.
to be in a bad temper.
to be now jesting, now in earnest.

Note to answer (a thing) respondere ad alicui or alicui rei; to answer (a person) always alicui. So dicere alicui to speak to a person, but scribere ad aliquem.

responsum dare only of answers given by oracles or lawyers.
serio dicere (Plaut. Bacch. 1. 1. 42) to say in earnest...
severitatem adhibere to show that one is serious.
ineptum esse (De Or. 2. 4. 17) to be silly, without tact.
nimium diligentem esse to be pedantic.

7. Language—Use of Language—Translation—Grammar

lingua graeca latinā locupletior (copiosior, uberior) est the Greek language is a richer one than the Latin.
commercium linguae intercourse of speech.
volutabilitas, solutio linguae volubility.
vitium orationis, sermonis or simply vitium a mistake, solecism.
saepe (crebro, multa) peccavit, erravit, lapsus est he has made several mistakes.
eiusdem linguae societate coniunctum esse to be united by having a common language.
orationis expertem esse to be unable to express one's ideas.
sermo patrius (Fin. 1. 2. 4) native tongue; vernacular.
consuetudo sermonis, loquendi to usage of language.
cotidiani sermonis usus the ordinary usage of language, everyday speech.
communis sermonis consuetudo the ordinary usage of language, everyday speech.
sermo familiaris et cotidianus the ordinary usage of language, everyday speech.
aliquid a consuetudine sermonis latini abhorret, alienum est the expression is not in accordance with Latin usage.
consuetudo vitiōsa et corrupta (opp. pura et incorrupta) sermonis incorrupta latini sermonis integritas pure, correct Latin.
sermo Latinus (opp. sermo parum Latinus) (cf. sect. VII. 2., note For the use of adverbs..) good Latin.
latine loqui (Brut. 45. 166) (1) to speak Latin, (2) to speak good Latin (also bene latine), (3) to express oneself clearly.
graece or graeca lingua loqui to speak the Greek language.
latinam linguam scire or didicisse to know Latin.
latine scire to know Latin.
latine commentari to write treatises in Latin.
aliquid e graeco in latinum (sermonem) convertere, vertere, transferre to translate from Greek into Latin.
Platonem vertere, convertere to translate Plato.
ab or de (not ex) Platone vertere, convertere, transferre to translate from Plato.

166 Such words as "pedantry," "pedant" can be expressed very variously in Latin, cf. N. D. 3. 31. 71 posse acerbos e Zenonis schola exire; Pro Mur. 9. 19 multorum difficultatem exorruit; Brut. 38. 143 erat in Crasso latine loquendi sine molestia diligens elegantia.
167 Cf. Cic. ad Herenn. 4. 12. 17 latinitas est quae sermonem purum conservat ab omni vitio remotum.
ex Platonis Phaedone haec in latinum conversa sunt
aliqual (graeca) latine reddere or sermone latino interpretari
ad verbum transferre, exprimere
verbum e verbo exprimere
verbum pro verbo reddere
totidem verbis transferre
his fere verbis, hoc fere modo converser, transferre
liber (scriptoris) conversus, translatus
interpretatio, translatio (not versio or conversio)
interpretes
leges dicendi praecipua grammaticorum
grammaticus (De Or. 1. 3. 10)
emendate scribere
latinum scribere
8. Sentence—Period—Words—Proverbs—Syllables
enuntiatio, enuntiatum, sententia
compositio, structura verborum
ambitus, circuitus, comprehensio, continatio (verborum, orationis), also simply periodus
constructio, structura verborum, forma dicendi
adiungi, addi conjunctivo (Marc. Cap. 3. 83)
copia, ubertas verborum
verbis abundantem esse, abundare
inopia verborum
lectissimis verbis uti (De Or. 3. 37)
prisca, obsoleta (op. usitata), ambigua verba
locutio (Brut. 74. 258)
verbo, nomine; re, re quidem vera si verba spectas

what follows has been translated into Latin from Plato’s Phaedo.
to render something into Latin.
to translate literally, word for word (not verbo tenus).
to translate literally, word for word (not verbo tenus).
to translate literally, word for word (not verbo tenus).
to translate literally, word for word (not verbo tenus).
to translate freely.
the work when translated; translation (concrete).
the process of translation.
the translator.
the rules of speech, grammar.
the rules of speech, grammar.
a linguist, philologian.
to write correctly, in faultless style.
to write good Latin.
the sentence, proposition.
the structure of the sentence.
the period.
the construction.
to be used with the conjunctive mood.
profusion of words.
to be rich in words.
poverty of expression.
to employ carefully chosen expressions.
obsolete, ambiguous expressions.
a phrase.
nominally; really.
literally.

168 Not regula, which means a level, standard, e.g. regula ad quam iudicia rerum diriguntur (Cic.)
169 The adverb grammatica is used with loqui, scribere = to speak, write correctly; grammatica and also litterator are used of elementary teachers.
170 Cf. latine docere philosophiam, to teach philosophy in Latin; Fin. 3. 12. 40 latine scire, to know Latin. (cf. ἐλληνικαὶ ζωικαὶ Xen. Anab. 7. 6. 8). Also latine didicisse, latine oblivisci (Caec. 22. 62), in which Dräger supposes an ellipse of loqui or dicere.
verbis alicuius, e.g. salutare (Liv. 9. 36)

haec verba sunt (Ter. Phorm. 3. 2. 32)
inanis verborum sonitus
inanium verborum flumen
flosculi, rhetorum pompa
voces iacere (Sall. Iug. 11)
nullum (omnino) verbum facere
ne verbum (without unum) quidem de aliquo facere
verba facere (de aliqua re, apud aliquem)
verbum ex aliquo elicere
verbis concertare or altercari cum aliquo (B. C. 3. 19. 6)
verborum concertatio
paucia dicere (paucia verba dicere only of the orator)
omnia verba huc redeunt
nullum verbum ex ore eius excidit (or simply el)
verbo parum valere (Tusc. 3. 5. 11)
verbum prorsus nullum intellegere
hui rei deest apud nos vocabulum
inducere novum verbum in latinam linguam

verba parere, fingere, facere
nominum interpretatio
vocabulary, 171 verbum, nomen ducere ab, ex...
verbum ductum esse a...putare
originem verbi repetere a...

nomina enodare or verborum origines quaerere, indagare
nomen amicitiae (or simply amicitia) dicitur ab amando
in aliqua re dici
quid significat, sonat haec vox?
quae est vis huius verbi?
quae notio or sententia subjecta est hui
ci vocis?
vis et notio verbi, vocabuli
voces, nomen carendi or simply carere hoc significat (Tusc. 1. 36. 88)
quem intellegimus sapientem? quae intellegitur virtus

171 verbum derivare means to form new words from words which exist already, e.g. by adding a syllable, Atrides from Atreus. For word-building, cf. Cic. De Or. 3. 37 and 38; Hor. A. P. 46.

in some one's name; on some one's behalf (not nomine alicuius).
these are mere empty phrases.
mere words; empty sound.
senseless rant.
fine, rhetorical phrases.
to let fall an expression.
to not say a word.
to say not a syllable about a person.
to speak on a subject.
to extract a word from some one.
to hold an altercation with a man.
an altercation, debate.
to say only a few words.
all this means to say.
no word escaped him.
to unable to find a suitable expression.
not to understand a single word.
we have no expression for that.
to introduce a new word into the Latin language.
to invent, form words.
etymology (not etymologia).
to form, derive a word from... (used of the man who first creates the word).
to derive a word from... (used of an etymologist).
to derive a word from... (used of an etymologist).
to give the etymological explanation of words.
the word amicitia comes from amare.
to be used in speaking of a thing.
what is the meaning, the original sense of this word?
what is the meaning, the original sense of this word?
what is the meaning, the original sense of this word?
the fundamental meaning of a word.
the word carere means...
what do we understand by "a wise man"?
what do we mean by "virtue"?
quid est virtus?
what do we mean by "virtue"?

idem valere, significare, declarare
to have the same meaning.

vocabula idem fere declarantia
synonyms.

vocabulum latius patet
the word has a more extended signification.

vocabulum angustius valet
the word has a narrow meaning.

iracundiam sic (ita) definiunt, ut ulciscendi
anger is defined as a passionate desire for

libidinem esse dicant or ut u. libido sit
revenge.

in bonam (malam) partem accipere aliquid
to take a thing in good (bad) part.

aemulatio dupliciter dicitur, ut et in laude et
the word aemulatio is employed with two

in vitio hoc nomen sit
meanings, in a good and a bad sense.

verba ac litteras or scriptum (legis) sequi
to hold by the letter (of the law).

hoc vocabulum generis neutri (not neutrius)
this word is neuter.

est)

ordo verborum (Or. 63. 214)
the order of words.

vocabulum proprium
the proper term; a word used strictly.

verbum translatum (Or. 27. 92)
a figurative expression; a word used

metaphorically.

translatio
a metaphor.

dermalis
well-arranged words.

continua translatio (Or. 27. 94)
a trope; metonymy.

simili uti
an allegory; continuous metaphor.

dissimulatio (Off. 1. 30. 108)
to employ a comparison, simile.

vetus (verbum) est (c. Acc. c. Inf.)
irony.

ut est in proverbio
it was said long ago that...

ut or quod or quomodo aiunt, ut or
as the proverb says.

quamadmodum dicitur
as the proverb says.

in proverbii consuetudinem or simply in

to pass into a proverb.

proverbium venire

hoc est Graecis hominibus in proverbio

to be used as a proverb.

bene illo Graecorum proverbio praecipitur
this is a proverb among the Greeks.

vetamur vetere proverbio
that Greek proverb contains an excellent

proverbium venire
lesson.

venire (vid. sect. II. 3, note tritus...)
an old proverb tells us not to...

vetus (verbum) eternus in proverbio
an old proverb which every one knows.

syllabam, litteram producere (opp. corripere)
to lengthen the pronunciation of a syllable or

(Quintil. 9. 4. 89)
letter.

haec vox longa syllaba terminatur, in longam
this word ends in a long syllable.

syllabam cadit, exit

to begin with a long syllable.

oriri a longa (De Or. 1. 55. 236)
a verbal, petty critic; a caviller.

sylabarum auceps
minute, pedantic carping at words.

verborum auctupium or captatio
to pronounce the syllables distinctly.

litteras exprimere (opp. obscurare)
to the letter; literally.

ad litteram, litterate
the alphabet.

litterarum ordo

litterae, elementa
the alphabet.

172 Compound words = verba copulata, iuncta (Or. 48. 159), coniuncta, cf. Cic. De Or. 3. 38. 154.

173 Cf. quarta elementorum littera, the fourth letter of the alphabet (Suet. Jul. 56).
ad litteram or litterarum ordine digere

to arrange in alphabetical order.

9. Writing—Writers—Books

litteris mandare or consignare aliquid (Acad. 2.1.2)
to put down in writing.

litteris persequi (vid. sect. VIII. 2, note persequi...) aliquid

to treat in writing.

scriptor (not auctor = guarantor)

the writer, author.

scribere

to take to writing, become an author.

ad scribendum or ad scribendi studium se conferre

to become a writer, embrace a literary career.

animum ad scribendum appellere, applicare

to become a writer, embrace a literary career.

librum scribere, conscribere

to write a book.

librum conficere, componere (De Sen. 1.2)
to compose, compile a book.

librum edere (Div. 1.3.6)
to publish a book.

librum evolvere, volvere

to open a book.

volumen explicare

to open a book.

librum mittere ad aliquem (Fin. 1.3.8)
to dedicate a book to some one.

index, inscriptio

the title of a book.

liber inscriptur "Laelius" (Off. 2.9.30)

Cicero says in his "Laelius."

Cicero dicit in Laelio (suo) or in eo (not suo) libro, qui inscriptur Laelius

there exists a book on...

est liber de...

exstat liber (notice the order of the words)

the book is still extant.

liber intercidit, periit

the book has been lost.

liber deperditus

a book which has been entirely lost sight of.

liber qui fertur alicuius nescio quis

a lost book of which fragments (relliquiae, not fragmenta) remain.

liber qui fertur alicuius

a book which is attributed to some one.

liber refertur ad nescio quem auctorem

an anonymous writer.

hic liber est de amicitia (not agit) or hoc libro agitur de am.

the book treats of friendship.

libro continetur aliquid

the book contains something... (not continet aliquid).

libro scriptor complexus est aliquid

the book contains something... (not continet aliquid).

in extremito libro (Q. Fr. 2.7.1)
at the end of the book.

liber mihi est in manibus

to be engaged on a book.

librum in manibus habere (Acad. 1.1.2)
to be engaged on a book.

liber, oratio in manibus est

the book, speech can easily be obtained.

librum in manus sumere

to take up a book in one's hands.

librum de manibus ponere

to lay down a book (vid. sect. XII.3, note

Note titulus which means—(1) an inscription on a tomb, monument; (2) public notice, e.g. an advertisement of a sale, sub titulum misit lares (Ov.); (3) metaph. title, honour, e.g. consulatus, coniugis. It is only in very late writers that it = a title of a book.

The perfect inscriptus est is only used when the writer himself is speaking of his book, e.g. de senectute disputavi eo libro, qui Cato maior inscriptus est; "...which I have entitled Cato maior."
vestem deponere...).
to polish, finish a work with the greatest care.
to put the finishing touch to a work.
a carefully written book.
to make extracts from Cicero's writings.
to enter a thing in one's note-book.
to furnish a book with notes, additional extracts, marks of punctuation.
to bury oneself in one's library.
to quote a passage of Plato.
our (not noster) author tells us at this point.
Cicero says this somewhere.
to study Plato.
to read cursorily.
we read in Plato.
we read in Plato's "Phaedo" we read.
the text of the author (not textus).
the reader.
a very charming book.
a man's soul breathes through his writings.
a clerical error, copyist's mistake.
full of orthographical errors.
to make a mistake in writing.
(1) to make frequent mistakes in writing; (2) to be full of mistakes (speaking of a passage).
to strike out, delete a word.

10. Letters

to write a letter to some one.
a letter to Atticus.

176 Distinguish the two verbs ponere = to set down for a moment temporarily, and deponere to lay aside, abandon altogether. Cf. vincere and devincere, perdere and deperdere.

177 legere in this connection only in the perfect.

178 Not lector, which means a professional reader, cf. De Or. 2. 55. 223. Similarly "audience" = ii qui audiunt or audientes (usually in oblique cases). Words in -tor and -trix always denote those who do something habitually or for some permanent object. Thus of functionaries—censor, dictator, quaestor; of artisans—fictor sculptor, institor retail dealer, mercator wholesale merchant, structor mason; of people who are always showing some distinguishing quality or defect—calumniator, ratiocinator; of those who have performed a feat so remarkable as to confer on them a durable characteristic—creator urbis (Romulus), servator Graeciae (Themistocles), Cimbrorum victor (Marius), etc.
quae ad A. scripta est
epistulam dare alicui ad aliquem
to charge some one with a letter for some one else.

epistulam reddere alicui (Att. 5. 21. 4)
to deliver a letter to some one (used of the messenger).

epistularum commercium
correspondence.
litterae missae et allatae
correspondence.
colloqui cum aliquo per litteras
to correspond with some one.
litteras inter se dare et accipere
to be in correspondence with...
litteras perferre aliquo
to take a letter somewhere.
epistulam signare, obsignare
to seal, fasten a letter.
epistulam solvere, aperire, resignare (of Romans also linum incidere)
to open a letter.
epistulam intercipere (Att. 1. 13. 2)
to intercept a letter.
epistulam deprehendere
to take forcible possession of a letter.
litteras recitare (Att. 8. 9. 2)
to read a letter aloud (in public).
litterae hoc exemplo (Att. 9. 6. 3)
the terms, contents of the letter are as follows.
kalendis Ianuariis Romā (dabam)
Rome, January 1st.
dies (fem. in this sense)
the date.
pater optime or carissime, mi pater (vid. sect. XII. 10)
my dear father.
to deliver a letter dated September 21st.

IX. The Emotions

1. Disposition—Emotion in General

animi affectio or habitus (De Inv. 2. 5)
humour; disposition.
ita animo affectum esse
to be so disposed.
animos tentare (Cluent. 63. 176)
to try to divine a person's disposition.
animum alicuius or simply alicuam flectere
to make a person change his intention.
animi motus, commotio, permotio
the emotions, feelings.
aliqua re moveri, commoveri
to be moved by a thing.
aliciuus animum commovere
to touch a person's heart, move him.
alciuius animum pellere
to make an impression on a person's mind.
motus excitare in animo (opp. sedare, exstinguere)
to excite emotion.
commotum or concitatum esse
to be moved, agitated.
commotum perturbatumque esse
to be greatly agitated.
aliciuus mentem turbare, conturbare, perturbare
to upset a person.
quid tibi animi est?
what sort of humour are you in?

179 Neither amatus nor dilectus can be used in this connection.
180 But not magno, laeto, etc., animo affici.
2. Joy—Pain

afficere aliquem gaudio, laetitia
afferre alicui laetitiam
laetitiam capere or percipere ex aliqua re
delectari aliqua re
in sinu gaudeere (Tusc. 3. 21. 51)
gaudio perfundi

cumulum gaudii alicui afferre (vid. sect. V. 6) (Fam. 16. 21. 1)
gaudio, laetitia exsultare
laetitia gestire (Tusc. 4. 6. 13)
effusa laetitia
laetitia gestiers
gaudio, laetitia efferri
animum alicuius ad laetitiam excitare
nirto gaudio paene despere
doleo aliquid, aliqua re, de and ex aliqua re
aegrre, graviter, moleste fero aliquid (or with Acc. c. Inf. or quod)
tuam vicem doloe
dolore affici
dolorem capere (percipere) ex aliqua re
doloribus premi, angri, ardere, cruciare,
distineri et divelli
dolorem alicui facere, afferre, commovere
acerbum dolorem alicui inurere
acer morsus doloris est (Tusc. 2. 22. 53)
dolorem in lacrimas effundere
dolori indulgere

dolor infuxus animo haeret (Phil. 2. 26)
dolore confici, tabescere
dolores remittunt, relaxant
dolori resistere
callum obducere dolor (Tusc. 2. 15. 36)
amimus meus ad dolorem obduruit (Fam. 2. 16. 1)
dolorem abicere, deponere, depellere
dolorem alicui eripere (Att. 9. 6. 4)
cum magn of me dolore
to give pleasure to some one.
to give pleasure to some one.
to take pleasure in a thing.
to take pleasure in a thing.
to rejoice in secret.
to be filled with delight.
to add the crowning point to a person's joy.
to utter cries of joy.
to be transported with joy.
a transport of joy.
to be beside oneself with joy.
to put a man in a pleasurable frame of mind.
to almost lose one's reason from excess of joy.
I am pained, vexed, sorry.
I am pained, vexed, sorry.
I am sorry for you.
to feel pain.
to be vexed about a thing.
to feel acute pain.
to cause a person pain.
to cause any one very acute pain.
the pain is very severe.
to find relief in tears.
to give way to grief.
grief has struck deep into his soul.
to be wasted with grief; to die of grief.
the pain grows less.
to struggle against grief.
to render insensible to pain.
I have become callous to all pain.
to banish grief.
to free a person from his pain.
to my sorrow.

181 gaudio compleri (Fin. 5. 14. 69) is rare in Cicero; gaudio impleri does not occur. Speaking generally, compleire, implere, replere, should not be used of emotions.
182 Cf. effusa fuga, headlong flight; effusi sumptus, lavish expenditure (Rosc. Am. 24. 68); cursus effusus (Liv. 9. 41. 17).
183 viem with a genitive or a possessive pronoun has the meaning "on account of," "with regard to," especially with verbs expressing the emotions, e.g. doleo, timeo, irascor.
184 Note too consuetudo callum obduxit stomacho meo (Fam. 9. 2. 3), habit has made me callous. callum properly is the thic nerveless skin which covers the bodies of animals.
3. Vexation—Care—Equanimity—Contentment—Affliction

In aegritudine, sollicitudine esse
to be vexed, mortified, anxious.
aegritudine, sollicitudine affici
to be vexed, mortified, anxious.
sollicitum esse
not to trouble oneself about a thing.
nihil omnino curare
not to trouble oneself about a thing.
non laborare de aliqua re
something harasses me, makes me anxious.
aliquid me sollicitat, me sollicitum habet,
mihi sollicitudini est, mihi sollicitudinem affert
aegritudo exest animum planeque conficit
anxiety gnaws at the heart and incapacitates it.
aegritudine, curis confici
to be wasting away with grief.
aegritudine afflictum, debilitatum esse,
to be bowed down, prostrated by grief.
mihi sollicitudini est, mihi sollicitudinem affert
something harasses me, makes me anxious.
aegritudinem alicuius elevare
to comfort another in his trouble.
aliquem aegritudine levare
to comfort another in his trouble.
quieoto, tranquillo, securro animo esse
to enjoy peace of mind.
satis habeo, satis mihi est c. Inf
I am content to...
rebus suis, sorte sua contentum esse
to be contented.
satis habeo, satis mihi est c. Inf
I am content to...

4. Fear—Terror—Anxiety

timorem, terrem alicui inicere, more strongly incure

timor aliquem occupat (B. G. 1. 39)
fear comes upon some one.
in timore esse, versari

timor aliquem occupat (B. G. 1. 39)
to be in fear.
in timore venire, pervenire

timor aliquem occupat (B. G. 1. 39)
to become frightened.
metus aliquem examinat (Mil. 24. 65)
a man is paralysed with fear.
exalbescere metu

timor aliquem occupat (B. G. 1. 39)
to grow pale with fear.
metu fractum et debilitatum, percusus esse

timor aliquem occupat (B. G. 1. 39)
to be completely prostrated by fear.
abis, omittere timorem

timor aliquem occupat (B. G. 1. 39)
to banish one's fears.
a metu respirare (Cluent. 70. 200)
to recover from one's fright.
ex metu se recreare, se colligere
to recover from one's fright.

185 The evidence of inscriptions and the best MSS. seems to point to the derivation of paenitet, not from poena (cf. punire, impunis), but from the root contained in penes, penetrare, penitus; its original meaning would thus be, "to be touched, affected within, at heart" (Bréal).
respirandi spatium dare to give time for recovery.
terror incidit alicui terror, panic seizes some one.
terror invadit in aliquem (rarely alicui, after Livy aliquem)
in terrorem conicere aliquem to overwhelm some one with terror.
(anim) angi (Brut. 27) to be very uneasy; to fret.
cura sollicitat angitque aliquem anxiety troubles and torments one.
angoribus premi to be tormented with anxiety.
angoribus confici (Phil. 2. 15. 37) to be worn out, almost dead with anxiety.


bono animo esse to be brave, courageous.
bonum animum habere to be brave, courageous.
animus alicui accedit, crescit to take courage.
animum capere, colligere to take courage.
animum recipere (Liv. 2. 50) to take courage again.
animo forti esse to be brave by nature.
fortem te praebe be brave!
alacri et erecto animo esse to show a brisk and cheerful spirit.
animum facere, addere alicui to succeed in encouraging a person.
animum alculiius confirmare to strengthen, confirm a person's courage.
animum alculiius augere (B. G. 7. 70) to increase a person's courage.
animum alculiius redintegrare to re-inspire courage.
animus frangitur, affligitur, percellitur, debilitatur their spirits are broken.
animos militum accendere to fire with courage.
animi cadunt their courage is ebbing.
animo cadere, deficere to lose courage; to despair.
animum demittere to lose courage; to despair.
erigere alicuius animum or aliquem to encourage a person.
excitare animum iacentem et afflictum (opp. frangere animum) to inspire the spiritless and prostrate with new vigour.
animo esse humili, demisso (more strongly animo esse fracto, perculo et abiecto) to be cast down, discouraged, in despair.
(Att. 3. 2)
inflatum, elatum esse aliqua re to be proud, arrogant by reason of something.
insolentia, superbia inflatum esse to be puffed up with pride.
magnos spiritus sibi sumere (B. G. 1. 33) to be haughty.
spiritus alicuius reprimere to lower a person's pride.
insolentius se efferre to behave arrogantly.
elatus se gerere to give oneself airs.
sibi sumere aliquid (Planc. 1. 3) to take upon oneself.
contumacius se gerere to display a proud obstinacy.
libera contumacia Socratis (Tusc. 1. 29. 71) the frank but defiant demeanour of Socrates (before his judges).

6. Presence of Mind—Composure—Despair

praesenti animo uti (vid. sect. VI. 8, note to possess presence of mind.
ut...

aequo (aequissimo) animo ferre aliquid

to endure a thing with (the greatest) sang-froid.

humane, modice, moderate, sapienter, constanter ferre aliquid

to bear a thing with resignation, composure.

(animo) paratum esse ad aliquid

to be resigned to a thing.

omnia perpeti paratum esse

to be ready to endure anything.

ad omnes casus se comparare

to prepare oneself for all contingencies.

animum alicuius de statu, de gradu demovere (more strongly depellere, deturbare)
to disconcert a person.

de statu suo or mentis deici (Att. 16. 15)
to lose one's composure; to be disconcerted.
de gradu deici, ut dicitur

to lose one's composure; to be disconcerted.

perturbari (animo)
to lose one's head, be beside oneself.

sui (mentis) compotem non esse

to be plunged into the depths of despair.

non esse apud se

to be plunged into the depths of despair.

(Plaut. Mil. 4. 8. 26)
to be plunged into the depths of despair.

mente vix constare (Tusc. 4. 17. 39)
to be quite unconcerned.

animo adesse (Sull. 11. 33)
to be quite unconcerned.

ad se redire

to regain one's self-possession.

constantiam servare

to be calm, self-possessed.

mente consistere

to be calm, self-possessed.

desperare (suis rebus)
to despair of one's position.

ad (summam) desperationem pervenire,

adduci (B. C. 2. 42)
to be plunged into the depths of despair.

desperatio rerum (omnia) (Catil. 2. 11. 25)
absolute despair; a hopeless situation.

quid (de) me fiet? (Ter. Heaut. 4. 3. 37)
what will become of me?

actum est de me
it's all over with me; I'm a lost man.

7. Hope—Expectation

spem habere

to cherish a hope.

spe duci, niti, teneri

to cherish a hope.

magna me spes tenet (with Acc. c. Inf.)

I have great hopes that...

(Tusc. 1. 41. 97)

sperare videor

I flatter myself with the hope...

bene, optime (meliora) sperare de aliquo

to hope well of a person.

(Nep. Milt. 1. 1)

in spem venire, ingredi, adduci

to conceive a hope.

spem concipere animo

to conceive a hope.

spem redintegrare (B. G. 7. 25)
to revive a hope.

spem alicui facere, afferre, inicere

to inspire any one with hope.

ad spem aliquem excitare, erigere

to inspire new hope in some one.

in maximam spem aliquem adducere (Att. 2.
to inspire some one with the most brilliant

186 These expressions are metaphors from the fencing-school. gradus is the position taken up by a combatant, so gradu depelli, deici = to be driven out of one's ground.

187 Used especially in the comic poets.

188 desperare is used, generally with de, more rarely with the accusative, in the meaning "to no longer count upon a thing," e.g. reditum, pacem; or with the dative, especially with sibi, suis rebus, saluti, fortunae suae. Note the use of desperatus, "abandoned," "given up," "despaired of," e.g. desperati morbi (Cic.), aegrota ac paene desperata res publica (Cic.).
22. 3) in meliorem spem, cogitationem aliquem inducere (Off. 2. 15. 53)
sperm proponere alici
spes affulget (Liv. 27. 28)
sperm falsam alici ostendere

spem alici adimere, tollere, auferre, eripere
spem praecidere, incidere (Liv. 2. 15)
sperm perdere
spe deici, depeili, deturbari
spes ad irritum cadit, ad irritum redigitur
spem abicare, deponere
inani, falsa spe duci, induci
spes me frustratur
spes extenuatur et evanescit
spem alicius fallere (Catil. 4. 11. 23)
sperm alici or alicius minuere
spem alicius confirmare
spem alere
spem habere in aliquo
spem suam ponere, collocare in aliquo
inter sperm metumque suspensum animi esse
praeter sperm, expectationem
exspectationem sui facere, commovere
exspectationem explere (De Or. 1. 47. 205)
exspectationi satisfacere, respondere
exspectatione alicius rei pendere (ani)
(ex Leg. Agr. 2. 25. 66)
exspectatione torqueri, cruciari
suspenso animo exspectare aliquid
aliquem in summam expectionem adducere (Tusc. 1. 17. 39)

hopes.
to induce some one to take a brighter view
of things.
to lead some one to expect...
a ray of hope shines on us.
to rouse a vain, groundless hope in some
one's mind.
to deprive a person of hope.
to cut off all hope.
to lose hope.
to lose hope.
effection is overthrown.
to give up hoping.
to be misled by a vain hope.
hope has played me false.
hope is vanishing by degrees.
to deceive a person's hope.
to weaken, diminish a person's hope.
to strengthen a person in his hopes.
to entertain a hope.
to set one's hope on some one.
to set one's hope on some one.
to hover between hope and fear.
contrary to expectation.
to cause oneself to be expected.
to fulfil expectation.
to respond to expectations.
to be in suspense, waiting for a thing.
to suffer torments of expectation, delay.
to be waiting in suspense for...
to rouse a person's expectation, curiosity to
the highest pitch.

8. Pity—Pardon—Want of Feeling—Cruelty

misericordiam alici commovere
misericordiam alicius concitare
ad misericordiam aliquem alicere, adducere, inducere
misericordia moveri, capi (De Or. 2. 47)
misericordiam implorare
indulgere viitis alicuius
alicui veniam dare (alicuius rei)
omnem humanitatem exuisse, abieicisse (Lig. 5. 14)
omnem humanitatis sensum amisisse
omnis humanitatis expertem esse
to excite some one's pity.
to excite some one's pity.
to arouse feelings of compassion in some
one.
to be touched with pity.
to implore a person's sympathy, pity.
to be indulgent to a person's faults.
to pardon some one.
to be quite insensible to all feelings of
humanity.
to be quite insensible of all feelings to
humanity.
to be absolutely wanting in sympathy.

189 Att. 1. 4. 5 crebras expectiones tui commoves—i.e. you are leading us to expect your arrival.
omnem humanitatem ex animo exstirpare
(Amic. 13. 48)
nullam partem sensus habere
crudelitate uti (vid. sect. VI. 8, note uti...)
crudelitatem exercere in aliquo
crudelitatem adhibere in aliquem
animadvertere in aliquem
to stifle, repress all humane sentiments in
one's mind.
to possess not the least spark of feeling.
to behave with cruelty.
to exercise one's cruelty on some one.
to exercise one's cruelty on some one.
to inflict punishment on a person.

9. Love—Longing—Admiration—Enthusiasm
carum habere aliquem
in amore habere aliquem
amore prosequi, amplecti aliquem
carum esse alicui
carum atque icundum esse alicui
adamasce aliquem (only in Perf. and Plup.)
(Nep. Dion 2. 3)
alicem tota pectore, ¹⁹⁰ ut dicitur, amare
(Leg. 18. 49)
alicem ex animo or ex animi sententia
amare (Q. Fr. 1. 1. 5)
amore captum, incensum, inflammatum
esse, ardere
amorem ex animo eicere
mel ac deliciae alicuius (Fam. 8. 8. 1)
amores et deliciae alicuius
in amore et deliciis esse alicui (active in
delicis habere aliquem)
alicem in sinu gestare (alicuis est in sinu
alicuius) (Ter. Ad. 4. 5. 75)
alicuis, aliquid mihi curae or cordi ¹⁹¹ est
curae habere alicuid
nihil antiquius or prius habeo quam ut (nihil
mihi antiquius or potius est, quam ut)
desiderio alicuius rei teneri, affici (more
strongly flagrare, incensum esse)
desiderio exardescere
admirationi esse
admiratione affici ¹⁹²
admirationem habere (Quintil. 8. 2. 6)
magna est admiration alciuius
admirationem alciui mouere
admiratione incensum esse
to feel affection for a person.
to feel affection for a person.
to feel affection for a person.
to be dear to some one.
to be dear to some one.
to become devoted to some one.
to love some one very dearly, with all one's
heart.
to love deeply.
to be fired with love.
to banish love from one's mind.
somebody's darling.
somebody's darling.
to be some one's favourite.
to love and make a bosom friend of a
person.
somebody, something is never absent from
my thoughts.
to have laid something to heart; to take an
interest in a thing.
there is nothing I am more interested in
than...
to long for a thing, yearn for it.
to be consumed with longing.
to be admired.
to be admired.
to be admired.
some one is the object of much admiration.
to fill a person with astonishment.
to be fired with admiration.

¹⁹⁰ pectus metaphorically only occurs in isolated phrases, e.g. toto pectore, cogitare, tremere. Its
commonest substitute is animus. Similarly cor metaphorically is only used in the phrase cordi est.
¹⁹¹ pectus metaphorically only occurs in isolated phrases, e.g. toto pectore, cogitare, tremere. Its
commonest substitute is animus. Similarly cor metaphorically is only used in the phrase cordi est.
¹⁹² admiratione affici also means "to be filled with admiration."
admirabilia ( = παράδοξα) paradoxes; surprising things.

studio ardere alicuius or alicuius rei (De Or. 2.1.1) to have enthusiasm for a person or thing.

studio alicuius rei alicuius incendere ardor, inflammatio animi, incitatio mentis, mentis vis incitator to make some one enthusiastic for a thing.

ardorem animi restinguere ardor animi res ed, consedit his enthusiasm has abated, cooled down.

10. Belief—Confidence—Loyalty—Protection—Promise—Veracity (fides, fiducia)

fidem habere alicui to believe a person.

fidem alicuius rei facere alicui rei to make some one believe a thing.

fidem tribuere, adiungere alicui rei to rob a person of his credit.

fidem abrogare, derogare alicui to weaken, destroy a man's credit.

fidem alicuius imminuere, infirmare (opp. confirmare) to have great confidence in a thing.

fidem alicuius labefactare (Cluent. 60. 194) to put confidence in some one.

fiduciam in aliquo ponere, collocare to put confidence in some one.

confidere alicui (but aliqua re) to have great confidence in a thing.

fiduciam (alicuius rei) habere to entrust a thing to a person's good faith.

fiducia sui (Liv. 25. 37) to put oneself entirely in some one's hands.

fiduciam (alicuius rei) habere to preserve one's loyalty.

fidem colere, servare to keep faith with a person, keep one's word.

fidem praestare alicui to keep faith with a person.

in fide manere (B. G. 7. 4. 5) to remain loyal.

fidem laedere, violare, frangere to break one's word.

fidem alicuius labefactare (Cluent. 60. 194) to make a person waver in his loyalty.

de fide deducere or a fide abducere alicuam to undermine a person's loyalty.

fidem addere alicui rei to guarantee the protection of the state; to promise a safe-conduct.

in fide recipere alicuam to make a person under some one's protection.

fidem dare alicui (opp. accipere) to give one's word that...

fidem servare (opp. fallere) to keep one's word (not tenere).

fidem persolvere to keep one's word, to fulfill a promise.

fidem (promissum) praestare to fulfill a promise.

fidem dare alicuius or alicuius rei (B. G. 2. 15. 1) to take a person under one's protection.

fidem alicuius obsecrare, implorare to implore some one's protection.

fidem publicam dare, interponere (Sall. Jug. 32. 1) to confirm, ratify, sanction something.

fidem dare alicuius obsecrare, implorare to guarantee the protection of the state; to promise a safe-conduct.

fidem dare alicui (opp. accipere) (c. Acc. c. Inf.) to give one's word that...

fidem servare (opp. fallere) to keep one's word (not tenere).

fidem persolvere to keep one's word, to fulfill a promise.

fidem (promissum) praestare to fulfill a promise.

fidem dare alicuius obsecrare, implorare to guarantee the protection of the state; to promise a safe-conduct.

fidem dare alicuius obsecrare, implorare to guarantee the protection of the state; to promise a safe-conduct.
fidem interponere (Sall. Iug. 32. 5)  
fidem prodere  
fidem frangere  
promisso stare  
fide obstrictum teneri (Pis. 13. 29)  

fidem facere, afferre alicui rei (opp. demere, de-, abrogare fidem)  
aliquid fidem habet (vid. also fides under sect. VII., History)  
sponsionem facere, sponsorem esse pro aliquo  
praestare aliquem, alicuid, de aliqua re or Acc. c. Inf.

11. Suspicion—Presentiment

suspicionem movere, excitare, inicere, dare alicui  
suspicionem habere de aliquo  
suspicionem aliquius rei habere  
suspicio (alicuius rei) cadit in aliquem, pertinet ad aliquem  
aliquem in suspicionem adducere (alicui), aliquem suspectum reddere  
in suspicionem vocari, cadere  
in suspicionem alicui venire  
suspicionem a se movere, depellere, propulsare (Verr. 3. 60. 140)  
suspicionem ex animo delere

suspicio insidet in animo ejus  
suspicio ei penitus inhaeret  
suspicio tenuissima, minima  
a suspicione aliquius rei abhorrere  
animus praesagiat malum  
amino praesagiat malum

12. Hatred—Jealousy—Envy

invisum esse alicui  
odio, invidiae esse alicui  
in invidia esse alicui  
in odio esse apud aliquem  
invidia flagrare, premi  
in odium, in invidiam venire alicui  
invidiam colligere (aliqua re)  
alicius odium subire, suspicer, se in se convertere, sibi confiare  
in alicuius odium incurrire  
in invidiam, odium (alicuius) vocare alicuem

to pledge one's word to...  
to break one's word.  
to break one's word.  
to abide by one's undertaking.  
to be bound by one's word; to be on one's honour.  
to make a thing credible.  
a thing finds credence, is credible.  
to be security for some one.  
to be answerable for a person, a thing.

to rouse a person's suspicions.  
to suspect a person.  
to be suspected of a thing.  
a suspicion falls on some one.  
to make a person suspected.  
to become the object of suspicion.  
to be suspected by some one.  
to clear oneself of a suspicion.  
to banish all feeling of prejudice from the mind.  
he is in a suspicious mood.  
he is in a suspicious mood.  
the faintest suspicion.  
to have no presentiment of a thing.  
my mind forebodes misfortune.  
my mind forebodes misfortune.

to be hated by some one.  
to be hated by some one.  
to be hated by some one.  
to be hated by some one.  
to be detested.  
to incur a person's hatred.  
to incur a person's hatred.  
to incur a person's hatred.  
to incur a person's hatred.  
to make a person odious, unpopular.
in invidiam adducere aliquem
invidiam alicui conflare (Catil. 1. 9. 23)
invidiam, odium ex-, concitare alicui, in aliquem
capitali odio dissidere ab aliquo (De Am. 1. 2)
odium explere aliqua re (Liv. 4. 32)
odium implacabile suscipere in aliquem

odio or invidia alicuius ardere to be consumed with hatred.
odio invidie alicuius ardere to be consumed with hatred.
odium inveteratum habere in aliquem (Vat. 3. 6)
odio inflammatum, accensum esse

odium restinguere, extinguere

to make a person odious, unpopular.
to make a person odious, unpopular.
to make a person odious, unpopular.
to be separated by a deadly hatred.
to glut one's hatred.
to conceive an implacable hatred against a man.
to be consumed with hatred.
to be retained with hatred.
to be filled with hatred.
to be filled with hatred (not implere, vid. sect. IX. 2, note gaudio...).
to stifle, drown one's hatred.

13. Discontent—Anger—Revenge—Fury

aegre, graviter, molestè, indignè ferre aliquid
indignitas, atrocitas rei (Mur. 25. 51)
o facinus indignum! (Ter. Andr. 1. 1. 118)
ira incensum esse
iracundia inflammatum esse
ira ardere (Flacc. 35. 88)
iracundia exardescere, effervescere
iracundia efferri
ira defervescit (Tusc. 4. 36. 78)
virus acerbitatis suae effundere in aliquem (De Amic. 23. 87)
iram in aliquem effundere
iram, bilem evomere in aliquem
irae indulgere (Liv. 23. 3)
praecipitem in iram esse (Liv. 23. 7)
animum explere
iracundiam continere, cohibere, reprimere
iram restinguere, sedare
animum alicuius ab iracundia revocare

stomachum, bilem alicui movere
ulcisci alicuem, poenas expetere ab aliquo
ulcisci alicuid, poenas alicuius rei expetere
ulcisci alicuem pro aliquo or pro aliqua re

poenas alicuius or alicuius rei repetere ab aliquo

194 ulcisci alicuem also means to avenge some one; to exact satisfaction on his behalf.
iniurias persequi (Verr. 2. 3. 9) to avenge an insult.
impellere aliquem in furorem to make some one furious.
furore inflammari, incendi to become furious.
furore incensus, abreptus, impulsus in a transport of rage.
indignatio aliquem incedit to be filled with indignation.
indignationes (Liv. 25. 1. 9) signs of irritation, of discontent.

X. Virtues and Vices

1. Virtue—Morality

vita honesta (turpis) a virtuous (immoral) life.
honesta expetere; turpia fugere to follow virtue; to flee from vice.
virtute praedatum, ornatum esse (opp. vitis obratum esse) to be virtuous.
viam virtutis ingredi (Off. 1. 32. 118) to walk in the ways of virtue.
omnia consilia et facta ad virtutem referre (Phil. 10. 10. 20) to make virtue the standard in every thought and act.
virtutem sequi, virtutis studiosum esse to strive to attain virtue.
virtutis perfectae perfecto munere fungi (Tusc. 1. 45. 109) to live a perfect life.
virtutem pristinam retinere to live as scrupulously moral a life as ever.
nihil ex pristina virtute remittere to live as scrupulously moral a life as ever.
sumnum bonum in virtute ponere to consider virtue the highest good.
hoc virtutis, ut... this is a characteristic of virtue, it...
a virtute discedere or deficere to deviate from the path of virtue.
bonitate in virtute desciscere, degenerare, deflectere
ea maiorum virtute desciscere, degenerare, deflectere
corrupti, depravari
e excitare aliquem ad virtutem to degenerate (from one's ancestors).
to be demoralised, corrupted.
to rouse in some one an enthusiasm for virtue.
bonitas (Fin. 5. 29. 65) kindheartedness.
naturae bonitas (Off. 1. 32. 118) innate goodness, kindness.
naturae bona natural advantages.

2. Vice—Crime

omni vitio carere to be free from faults.
vitia erumpunt (in aliquem) (De Amic. 21. 76) his vices betray themselves.
animum vitis dedere to abandon oneself to vice.
vitiis, sceleribus contaminari or se to be tainted with vice.

\[195\] For "thoughts and deeds," cf. Or. 3. 43. 182 mores instituta et facta; Prov. Cons. 8. 20 consilia et facta; Fin. 2. 14. 5 studia et facta; Verr. 5. 14. 35 mentes hominum et cogitationes.
\[196\] Note too finis bonorum et malorum = the highest good and the greatest evil.
contaminare (Off. 3. 8. 37)

vitiis, sceleribus inquinatum, contaminatum, 
obreutum esse

to be vicious, criminal.

vita extirpare et funditus tollere

to eradicate vice.

vita omnibus flagitiis, 197 vitis dedita

to be fired with desire of a thing.

to have an ardent longing for a thing.

to rouse a person's interest, cupidity.

to rouse a person's interest, cupidity.

to be blinded by passions.

to be carried away by one's passions.

to be carried away by something.

natura procliem esse ad vitia

to commit a crime and so make oneself liable to the consequences of it.

to commit a crime and so make oneself liable to the consequences of it.

to commit a crime against some one.

to heap crime on crime.

to expiate a crime by punishment.

scelexa moliri (Att. 7. 11)

to commit crime.

to commit crime.

to do a criminal deed.

sceles facere, committere

to commit murder.

to commit murder.

to ordain some one to murder.

sceles se devincire, se obstringere, astringi

to commit oneself to the consequences of it.

to commit oneself to the consequences of it.

to commit oneself against some one.

to expiate oneself by punishment.

sceles (in se) concipere, suscipere

to commit a crime and so make oneself liable to the consequences of it.

to commit a crime and so make oneself liable to the consequences of it.

to commit a crime against some one.

to heap crime on crime.

to expiate a crime by punishment.

sceles edere in aliquem (Sest. 26. 58)

to expiate a crime by punishment.

to expiate a crime by punishment.

to expiate a crime by punishment.

sceles scelere cumulare (Catil. 1. 6. 14)

to commit a crime against some one.

to heap crime on crime.

to expiate a crime by punishment.

sceles 198 supplicio expire

to expiate a crime by punishment.

to expiate a crime by punishment.

to expiate a crime by punishment.

3. Desire—Passion—Self-Control

cupiditatem alicuius rei accensum, 
inflammatum esse

to be fired with desire of a thing.

to have an ardent longing for a thing.

to rouse a person's interest, cupidity.

to rouse a person's interest, cupidity.

to be blinded by passions.

to be carried away by one's passions.

to abandon oneself (entirely) to debauchery.

aliquem ad cupiditatem incitare

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

aliquem cupiditatem inflammare

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

libidine ferri

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

to be the slave of one's desires.

sibi (totum) libidinibus dedere

to abduct by desire.

to abduct by desire.

to abduct by desire.

to abduct by desire.

to abduct by desire.

sibi imperare or continere et coercere se 
ipsum

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

animum regere, coercere, cohibere

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

animum vincere (Marcell. 3. 8)

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

to have self-control; to restrain oneself, master one's inclinations.

imperare cupiditatibus

to overcome one's passions.

to overcome one's passions.

to overcome one's passions.

to overcome one's passions.

to overcome one's passions.

coercere, cohibere, continere, domitas 
habere cupiditates

to bridge one's desires.

refrenare cupiditates, libidines 
effrenatae cupiditates

indomitae animi cupiditates

to be restrained, unbridled lust.

to be restrained, unbridled lust.

to be restrained, unbridled lust.

to be restrained, unbridled lust.

to be restrained, unbridled lust.

cupiditates explere, satiare

197 flagitium is a crime against oneself, e.g. drunkenness. sceles is a sin against society at large, e.g. theft, murder. nefas a sin against God, e.g. sacrilege, parricide. facinus any unusual action, then generally a crime, outrage.

198 detto
libidinem alicuius excitare  
libido dominatur (Or. 65. 219)  
libido consédit  
cupiditates deferbuerunt (Cael. 18. 43)  
animi perturbationes extirpare

to arouse some one's lust.  
the passions win the day.  
the storm of passion has abated.  
the passions have cooled down.  
to eradicate passion from the mind.

4. Wrong—Insult—Outrage—Offence

iniuriam inferre, facere alicui  
iniuria afficere alicuem  
iniuria lacessere alicuem  
iniuria abstinere (Off. 3. 17. 72)  
iniuriam accipere  
iniuriam ferre, pati  
iniurias defendere, repellere, propulsare  
inurias negotiæ  
ab iniuria alicuem defendere  
satisfacere alicui pro (de) iniuris  
contumelia alicuem afficere  
voces (verba) contumeliasæ  
verbœ contumeliosæ  
contumeliosæ vocibus prosequi alicuem (vid. sect. VI. 11, note Prosequi...)
maledictis alicuem oneræ, lacerare  
offendere alicuem, alicuius animum  
offendere apud alicuem (Cluent. 23. 63)  
in offensionem alicuius incurrere (Verr. 1. 12. 35)  
offendi aliqua re (animus offenditur)  
offendere in aliquo (Mil. 36. 99)  
offendere in aliqua re (Cluent. 36. 98)  
offensionem habere  
res habet aliquid offensionis

to wrong a person.  
to wrong a person.  
to provoke a person by a gratuitous insult.  
to refrain from doing a wrong, an injustice.  
to be the victim of an injustice.  
to suffer wrong.  
to repel an injury.  
to leave a wrong unpunished, to ignore it.  
to protect any one from wrong.  
to give some one satisfaction for an injury.  
to insult some one.  
insulting expressions.  
sufiærisk expressions.  
to use insulting expressions to any one.

to heap abuse on some one.  
to hurt some one's feelings.  
to hurt some one's feelings.  
to hurt some one's feelings.

to feel hurt by something.  
to have something to say against a person,
to object to him.  
to take a false step in a thing; to commit an indiscretion.
to give offense to, to shock a person (used
doing things, vid. sect. V. 18).  
there is something repulsive about the thing.

5. Violence—Ambuscade—Threats

vim adhibere, facere alicui  
vim inferre alicui  
vim et manus afferre alicui (Catil. 1. 8. 21)  
vim vi depellere  
vi vim illatam defendere  
isidias collocare, locare (Mil. 10. 27)  
isidias alicui parare, facere, struere, instruere, tendere

to use violence against some one.  
to do violence to a person.  
to kill with violence.  
to meet force by force.  
to meet force by force.  
to set an ambuscade.  
to waylay a person.

199 Notice too offendere caput (Quintil. 6. 3. 67), pedem (B. Hisp. 23), to strike one's head, foot against anything; offendere alicuem imparatum (Fam. 2. 3), to find some one unprepared, cf. καταλαμβάνειν.
to place some one in ambush.
to draw some one into an ambush.
to place oneself in ambush.
to threaten some one with death, crucifixion, torture, war.
to threaten with fire and sword.
to threaten war, carnage.
to use threats.
to use threats.

6. Appearance—Deceit—Falsehood—Derision

*speciem alicuius rei habere* to have the appearance of something.
*speciem alicuius rei praebere* to give the impression of...; have the outward aspect of...
*speciem praes se ferre* to give the impression of...; have the outward aspect of...

—in speciem
*specie* (De Amic. 13. 47) apparently; to look at.
*per speciem* (alicuius rei) apparently; to look at.
*per simulationem, simulatione alicuius rei* apparently; to look at.
*dissimulare* to pretend to be ill.
*alter sentire ac loqui (aliud sentire, aliud loqui)* to pretend to be ill.
*per dolum* (B. G. 4. 13) by craft.
*dolis et fallaciis* (Sall. Cat. 11. 2) by the aid of fraud and lies.
*sine fuco ac fallaciis* (Att. 1. 1. 1) without any disguise, frankly.
*verba dare alicui* (Att. 15. 16) to deceive a person, throw dust in his eyes.
*mendacium dicere* to tell lies.
*falsa (pro veris) dicere* to tell lies.
*ludere, irridere, deridere alicuem* to make sport of, rally a person.
*illudere alicui or in alicuem* (more rarely alicuem) to make sport of, rally a person.
*per ludibrium* to make sport of, rally a person.
*ludibrio esse alicui* to serve as some one's butt.
*in ludibrium verti* (Tac. Ann. 12. 26) to become an object of ridicule; to be laughed at.
*omnibus artibus alicuem ludificari, eludere* to fool a person thoroughly.
*per ludibrium* in sport, mockery.

---

*simulo = I pretend to be what I am not, cf. ἀλαζών, a braggart; dissimulo = I pretend not to be what I am, cf. ἐρωτ., a mock-modest person.*
7. Duty—Inclination

officium suum facere, servare, colere, tueri, exsequi, praestare
to do one's duty.

officio suo satisfacere (Div. in Caec. 14. 47)
to do one's duty.

officio suo fungi
to do one's duty.

omnes officii partes exsequi
to fulfil one's duty in every detail.

nullam officii partem deserere
to fulfil one's duty in every detail.

diligentem esse in retinendis officiis
to be exact, punctual in the performance of one's duty.

officium suum deserere, neglegere
to neglect one's duty.

diligentem esse in retinendis officiis
to neglect one's duty.

ab officio discedere
to neglect one's duty.

in officio manere (Att. 1. 3)
to return to one's duties.

contra officium est c. Inf.
to remain faithful to one's duty.

ab officio abduci, avocari
it is a breach of duty to...

salvo 203 officio (Off. 3. 1. 4)
to let oneself be perverted from one's duty.

multa et magna inter nos officia
without violating, neglecting one's duty.
intercedunt (Fam. 13. 65)
we are united by many mutual obligations.

in aliquem officia conferre
to be courteous, obliging to some one.

aliquem officii suis complecti, prosequi
to be courteous, obliging to some one.

officiosum esse in aliquem
a most courteous letter.

litterae officii or humanitatis plenae
have an inclination for a thing.

studere alicui rei, studiosum esse alicuius rei
have an inclination for a thing.

studio alicuius rei teneri
have an inclination for a thing.

propensum, proclivem esse ad aliquid (opp.
propensum, proclivem esse ad aliquid (opp.
alienum, aversum esse, abhorrere ab aliqua re)
to have an inclination for a thing.

studii suis obsequi (De Or. 1. 1. 3)
to have an inclination for a thing.

sibi or ingenio suo indulgere (Nep. Chabr. 3)
to indulge one's caprice.

8. Reason—Conscience—Remorse

rationis participem (opp. expertem) esse
to be endowed with reason.
ratione praeditum esse, uti
to be endowed with reason.

prudenter, considerate, consilio agere (opp.
to act reasonably, judiciously.
temere, nullo consilio, nulla ratione)

sapere (Off. 2. 14. 48)
to be a man of sense, judgment.

resipiscere (Att. 4. 5. 2)
to recover one's reason, be reasonable

ad sanitatem reverti, redire
to recover one's reason, be reasonable

203 Notice salvis legibus (Fam. 1. 4), without breaking the law; salva fide (Off. 3. 4. 44), without breaking one's word.

204 officium is used of anything which one feels bound to do, either on moral grounds or from a desire to please others (especially those in authority). Thus the word denotes not merely duty, sense of duty, faithful performance of duty, submissiveness (cf. sect. xvi. 13), but also courteous, obliging behaviour, complaisance, mark of respect. Objectively it has the meaning of an office, service, command, e.g. officium maritimum.
ad bonam frugem se recipere to recover one's reason, be reasonable again.
ad sanitatem adducere, revocare aliquem to bring some one back to his senses.
satin (= satisne) sanus es? are you in your right mind?
rationi repugnare to be contrary to all reason.
conscientia recta, recte facti (factorum), virtutis, bene actae vitae, rectae voluntatis a good conscience.
mens bene sibi conscia a good conscience.
conscientia mala or peccatorum, culpae, sceleris, delicti a guilty conscience.
aminus male sibi conscius a guilty conscience.
nullius culpae sibi conscium esse to be conscious of no ill deed.
conscientiae maleficiorum stimulant aliquem his guilty conscience gives him no rest.
conscientia mala angi, excruiciari to be tormented by remorse.
conscientia recte factorum erigi to congratulate oneself on one's clear conscience.

Furiae agitant et vexant aliquem the Furies harass and torment some one.

9. Measure—Standard—Limit—Moderation

modum tenere, retinere, servare, adhibere to observe moderation, be moderate.
omnia modice agere to be moderate in all things, commit no excess.
modum facere, statuere, constituere alicui rei or alicuius rei to set a limit to a thing.
modum transire to pass the limit.
extra modum prodire to pass the limit.
ultra modum progresi to pass the limit.
metiri, ponderare, aestimare, iudicare aliquid (ex) aliqua re to measure something by the standard of something else; to make something one's criterion.
dirigere or referre aliquid ad aliquam rem to measure something by the standard of something else; to make something one's criterion.

 fines certos terminosque constituere to impose fixed limitations.
 terminis circumscribere aliquid to set bounds to a thing, limit it.
 moderatum, continentem esse to behave with moderation.
 moderatum se praebere to behave with moderation.
 temperantia uti to show moderation in a matter.
 moderationem, modum adhibere in aliqua re to show moderation in a matter.
 moderari aliquid (Flacc. 5. 12) to behave with moderation.
 modice ac sapienter with moderation and judgment.


206 Only Livy and subsequent writers use modum excedere, and in the same way supra modum.
sine modo; nullo modo adhibito with no moderation.
extra, praeter modum beyond all measure.
mediocritatem tenere (Off. 1. 25. 89) to observe the golden mean.

10. Morals—Immorality—Principles—Character

homo bene (male) moratus a moral (immoral) man.
homo perditus a depraved, abandoned character.
praeccepta de moribus or de virtute moral precepts.
morum praecepta tradere alicui to give moral advice, rules of conduct.
devirute praecipere alicui moral corruption (not corruptela morum).
tam perditis or corruptis moribus amongst such moral depravity.
mores in dies magis labuntur (also with ad, e.g. ad mollitiem) immorality is daily gaining ground.
severus morum castigator a stern critic of morals.
aliquid abhorret a meis moribus something is contrary to my moral sense,
insitum [atque innatum] est animo or in goes against my principles.
animi (oppos. insitum) est animo alicuius)
consilia et facta (cf. sect. X. 1, note For something is contrary to my moral sense,
thought and deed.
institutum tenere to remain true to one's principles.
ratione; animi quodam judicio on principle.
meae vitae rationes ab ineunte aetate a sound and sensible system of conduct.
susceptae (Imp. Pomp. 1. 1.) the principles which I have followed since I
certas rationes in agendo sequi came to man's estate.
omnia temere agere, nullo iudicio uti to have no principles.
caeco impetu ferri to have no principles.
natura et mores; vita moresque; indoles a man of character, with a strong
animi ingenii; or simply ingenium, personality.
indoles, natura, mores inconsistency; changeability.
vir constans, gravis (oppos. homo inconstans, to be consistent.
levis) to be inconsistent, changeable.
sibi constare, constantem esse something is a characteristic of a man.
animo mobili esse (Fam. 5. 2. 10) inconsistency; changeability.
aliquid est proprium alicuius
mobilitas et levitas animi

XI. Religion

1. God—Worship

numen (deorum) divinum the sovereign power of the gods.
dei propitii (opp. irati) the favour of heaven.

Do not translate "to act, behave, conduct oneself" by agere without an object or an accompanying
adverb, e.g. bene, recte agere; however, with the gerundive the adverb may be omitted, e.g.
agendum est, tempus agendi, celeritas in agendo.
**superi; inferi**
superior (Orcus and Tartarus only poetical)
inferior

**ad inferos descendere**
to descend to the world below.

**apud inferos esse**
to be in the lower world.

**aliquem ab inferis or a mortuis evocare, excitare (passive ab inferis existere)**
to summon some one from the dead.

**deos sancte, pie venerari**
to be an earnest worshipper of the gods.

**deum rite (summa religione) colere**
to honour the gods with all due ceremonial (very devoutly).

**cultus dei, deorum (N. D. 2. 3. 8)**
worship of the gods; divine service.

**sacra, res divinae, religiones, caerimoniae rebus divinis interesse (B. G. 6. 13)**
to take part in divine service (of the priest).

**sacris adesse**
to be present at divine service (of the people).

**sacris initiari (Quintil. 12. 10. 14)**
to be initiated into the mysteries of a cult.

**templa deorum adire**
to make a pilgrimage to the shrines of the gods.

**aliquem in deorum numero referre, reponere**
to deify a person.

**aliquem in deorum numerum referre**
to consider as a god.

**aliquem divino honore colere**
to pay divine honours to some one.

**alicui divinos honores tribuere, habere**
to approach the gods.

**propius ad deos accedere (Mil. 22. 59)**
heavenly things; earthly things.

**supera et caelestia; humana et citerioria**
by divine inspiration (often = marvellously, excellently).

**divinitus accidit**
it happened miraculously.

---

**2. Religion—Religious Scruple—Oath**

**imbuere (vid. sect. VII. 7, note imbuere...)**
to inspire with religious feeling, with the fear of God.

**pectora religione audientium animos religione perfundere (Liv. 10. 388)**
to fill the souls of one's audience with devotion.

**religionem ex animis extrahere (N. D. 1. 43. 121)**
to banish devout sentiment from the minds of others.

**omnem religionem tollere, delere religionem labefactare (vid. sect. V. 7, note In Latin metaphor...)**
to annihilate all religious feeling.

**religione obstrictos habere multitudinis animos (Liv. 6. 1. 10)**
to shake the foundations of religion.

**religionem alicui afferre, inicere, incutere reliquem religiones habere or in religionem vertere aliquid in religionem alicui venit**
to have power over the people by trading on their religious scruples.

**aliquid in religionem alicui venit**
to inspire some one with religious scruples.

---

**religio (original meaning probably that which binds down, cf. religo, leges, lictor, etc.) denotes, subjectively, religious feeling, devotion, fear of God, religious scruple, conscientiousness. Objectively it means the object of religious fear, a sacred thing or place, also that which is contrary to the gods' will, a crime, sin, curse; lastly in an active sense a religious obligation, an oath.**
nulla religio
religionem externam suscipere
novas religiones instituere
bellum pro religionibus susceptum
violatas caerimonias inepti religione
sancire (Tusc. 1. 12. 27)
iusiurandum dare alicui
ex animi mei sententia iuro
iureiurando aliquem astringere
iureiurando aliquem adiger
iureiurando teneri (Off. 3. 27. 100)
iusiurandum (religionem) servare, conservare
periuirum facere; peierare
iusiurandum violare

absence of scruples, unconscientiousness.
to embrace a strange religion.
to introduce a new religion, a new cult.
a religious war.
to invoke an irrevocable curse on the profanation of sacred rites.
to swear an oath to a person.
I swear on my conscience.
to bind some one by an oath.
to make some one take an oath.
to promise an oath to...
to be bound by oath.
to keep one's oath.
to commit perjury, perjure oneself.
to break one's oath.

3. Belief—Unbelief—Superstition

opinio dei
deam esse credimus
deos esse negare
insitas (innatas) dei cognitiones habere (N. D. 1. 17. 44)
omnibus innatum est et in animo quasi insculptum esse deum
natura in omnium animis notionem dei impressit (N. D. 1. 16. 43)
impietas
qui deum esse negat
superstitione mentes occupavit (Verr. 4. 51. 113)
superstitione imbutum esse
superstitione teneri, constrictum esse, obligatum esse
superstitionem funditus tollere
superstitionem radicitus or penitus evellere formidines

belief in god.
we believe in the existence of a God.
to deny the existence of the gods.
to have innate ideas of the Godhead; to believe in the Deity by intuition.
belief in God is part of every one's nature.
Nature has implanted in all men the idea of a God.
unbelief.
an atheist.
superstition has taken possession of their souls.
to be tinged with superstition.
to be the slave of superstition.
to absolutely annihilate superstition.
to destroy superstition root and branch.
superstitious fears; phantoms.

4. Prayers—Wishes—Vows

precari alicuid a deo
precari deum, deos
supplicare deo (Sall. Iug. 63. 1)
adhibere deo preces
praieire verba (carmen) (Liv. 31. 17)

prays to God.
prays to God.
prays to God.
prays to God.
to read prayers for the congregation to repeat.

---

sacramentum dicere alicui and apud aliquem = to take in some one's presence an oath to the standard, a military oath.
to raise the hands to heaven (attitude of prayer).

to pray.

to thank, glorify the immortal gods.

to call the gods to witness.

to call gods and men to witness.

and may God grant success!

and may heaven avert the omen! heaven preserve us from this!

God forbid!

heaven forfend!

may heaven's blessing rest on it.

to bless (curse) a person.

to make a vow.

to accomplish, pay a vow.

to have to pay a vow; to obtain one's wish.

5. Sacrifice—Festival

to sacrifice.

to sacrifice.

with incense and perfumes.

after having performed the sacrifice (with due ritual).

a periodically recurring (annual) sacrifice.

to profane sacred rites.

to slaughter victims.

to appease the anger of the gods.

to appease the manes, make sacrifice for departed souls.

to sacrifice human victims.

to make a sacrifice on the tomb of one's ancestors.

to offer libations.

to keep, celebrate a festival.
supplicationem indicere ad omnia pulvinaria (Liv. 27. 4) to proclaim a public thanksgiving at all the
street-shrines of the gods.
supplicationem quincldecim dierum decernere (Phil. 14. 14. 37) to decree a public thanksgiving for fifteen
days.
supplicationem habere (Liv. 22. 1. 15) to celebrate a festival of thanksgiving.
lectisternium facere, habere (Liv. 22. 1. 18) to hold a lectisternium.

6. Oracle—Prodigies—Auspices—Presage

oraculum consulere to consult an oracle.
oraculum petere (ab aliquo) to ask for an oracular response.
mittere Delphos consultum to send and consult the oracle at Delphi.
oraculum dare, edere to give an oracular response.
responsum dare (vid. sect. VIII. 5, note Note to answer...), respondere to give an oracular response.
oraculum Pythium (Pythicum) an oracle given by the Delphian Apollo (Apollo Pythius).
vox Pythia (Pythica) (Liv. 1. 56) an oracle given by the Delphian Apollo (Apollo Pythius).
prodigia procurare (Liv. 22. 1) to avert by expiatory sacrifices the effect of ominous portents.
libros Sibyllinos adire, consulere, inspicere to consult the Sibylline books.
augurium agere, auspicari (N. D. 2. 4. 11) to take the auspices, observe the flight of birds.
de caelo servare (Att. 4. 3. 3) to observe the sky (i.e. the flight of birds, lightning, thunder, etc.)
the omens are favourable to some one.
aves (alites, oscines) addicunt alicui (opp. abdicunt alicuiq adicunt alicuiq)
augures obnuntiant (consuli) (Phil. 2. 33. 83) the augurs announce an unfavourable sign.
auspicato (rem gerere, urbem condere) after having duly taken the auspices.
omen accipere (opp. improbare) to accept as a happy omen.
accipere, vertere alicui in omen to interpret something as an omen.
faustis ominibus with favourable omens.
omen infaustum, triste an evil omen; presage of ill.

XI. Domestic Life

1. The House and its different Parts
domus necessariis rebus instructa a comfortably-furnished house.
domus ruina impendet the house threatens to fall in (vid. sect. X. 5,

213 procurare, a technical term of religious ceremonial = to avert by expiation; to take the necessary measures, observe the proper ceremony for appeasing the anger of the gods.
214 Not auspicia habere, which means to have the right to take the auspices. As this right was usually combined with the right to command, we find such phrases as ponere auspicia, to give up a command; imperio auspicioque alicuius, auspiciis alicuius, under some one's command.
215 In the science of augury, alites denoted birds which gave omens by their flight; oscines those which gave them by their cries.
Note "Threaten"...

The house threatens to fall in (vid. sect. X. 5, note "Threaten"...).

The house suddenly fell in ruins.

To demolish, raze a house.

The house is not large enough for all.

To be a regular visitor at a house.

I felt quite at home in his house.

To be at some one's house.

To enter the house.

To welcome to one's house (opp. to shut one's door against some one).

To never set foot out of doors.

To cross the threshold.

To go out of the house.

To turn some one out of the house.

In the streets.

To show oneself in the streets, in public.

To never appear in public.

To never appear in public.

To escort a person from his house.

To fight for hearth and home.

At home; in one's native country.

To knock at the door.

To open, shut the door.

To bolt the door.

To burst open the door.

To barricade a door (a city-gate).

2. Domestic Matters—Property

To keep house.

To possess means, to be well off.

Rem domesticam, familiarem administrare, regere, curare

Rem or opes habere, bona possidere, in

216 ruina = fall, overthrow (metaphor. e.g. ruina rei publicae, ruinae fortunarum, Catil. 1. 6. 14). In plur. it is used of the ruins, débris resulting from an overthrow, e.g. urbs strata ruinis, a town in ruins; fumantes ruinae urbis. For "ruins" in the sense of remains of old buildings use parietinae.

217 Also metaphor. e.g. Macedonia te no capit.

218 Notice too deducere coloniam; deducere naves, to launch ships, opposed to subducere = to beach a boat; deducere adolescentes ad virum clarissimum (De Am. 1. 1); deducere de sententia aliquem; rem in eum locum deducere, ut...; de capite deducere (opp. addere) quod pernumeratum est = to subtract from the capital the amount paid; deducere aliquem; to escort a person from his province to Rome.

219 At Rome there were altars not only in the temples but also in the streets and in private houses. In a house there were usually two—one in the court, the altar of the Penates; another in the atrium on a small hearth (focus), this was the altar of the Lares. Hence aerae focique = the altars and hearths of the Lares and Penates.
bonis esse
opibus, divitiis, bonis, facultatibus abundare
to be very rich.
rem bene (male) gerere 220 (vid. sect. XVI.
to manage one's affairs, household, property
10a) well or ill.
rem familiarem tueri
to manage one's affairs, household, property
to neglect, mismanage one's household
matters.
rem familiarem neglegere
to be economical.
diligentem, frugi esse
a careful master of the house.
diligens paterfamilias
a good, useful slave.
frugi 221 (opp. nequam) servus
to be a strict disciplinarian in one's
severum imperium in suis exercere, tenere
household.
(De Sen. 11. 37)
to come into the possession of something.
in possessionem alicuius rei venire
in possessionem alicuius rei invadere
to take forcible possession of a thing.
expellere alicuam domo, possessionibus
to drive a person out of his house, his
pellere
property.
demovere, decere alicuam de possessione
to dispossess a person.
exturbare alicuam omnibus fortunis, e
 drive a person out of house and home.
possessionibus
evertere alicuam bonis, fortunis patriis
to give up a thing to some one else.
possessione alicuius cedere alcu (Mil.
27. 75)
res, quae moveri possunt; res moventes 222
movable, personal property.
(Liv. 5. 25. 6)
fundi
property in land; real property.

3. Habitation—Clothing

habitare 223 in domo alicuiau, apud alicuem
to live in some one's house.
(Acad. 2. 36. 115)
to dwell in a certain place.
domicilium (sedem ac domicilium) habere in
to take up one's abode in a place, settle
aliquo loco
down somewhere.
sedem collocare alicubi (Rep. 2. 19. 34)
to take up one's abode in a place, settle
sedem ac domicilium (fortunas suas)
down somewhere.
constituere alicubi

220 rem gerere = generally to manage one's affairs. Then specially—(1) to do business (of commercial
men); (2) to administer one's estate; (3) to hold a command (of a general in the field). res gerere
plur. = to carry out, accomplish undertakings, used specially of political activity.

221 frugi is an old case-form (either locative or dative) from an obsolete nominative frux. Cf. bonae
frugi esse, to be useful; ad bonam frugem se recipere, to come to one's senses (Cael. 12. 28).

222 res moventes, movere is apparently sometimes used intransitively, e.g. terra movet (Liv. 35. 40;
40. 59), but here moventes is probably the participle of the middle moveri (cf. res qua moveri
possunt). For parallel examples of a middle verb with a participle present or a gerundive cf. Fin. 2. 10.
31 utra voluptate stante an movente? Suet. Claud. 28 lecticam per urbem vehendi ius; Or. 2. 71. 287
ceteris in campo exercentibus, etc.

223 habitate locum is not used, locus habitatur is. On the other hand, we find incolere Asiim, etc., or
with preps. cis, trans, inter, prope, circum—incolere being used intransitively, e.g. B. G. 1. 1. 4
Germani qui trans Rhenum incolunt. incolere is used of a number of people, habitate of individuals.
considere alicubi (Att. 5. 14. 1) to take up one's abode in a place, settle down somewhere.

multitudinem in agris collocare to settle a large number of people in a country.

domo emigrare (B. G. 1. 31) to emigrate.
domo profugus (Liv. 1. 1) homeless.

induere vestem (without sibi) to dress oneself.

vestem mutare (opp. ad vestitum suum redire) (Planc. 12. 29) to go into mourning.

vestimenta (et calceos) mutare to change one's clothes (and shoes).

vestitus obsoletus, tritus cast-off clothing.

vestis stragula or simply vestis drapery.

togatus, 224 palliatus with a toga, cloak on.

pannis obsitus in rags paludatus, sagatus in a military cloak (paludamentum, of a general; sagum, of soldiers).

togam virilem (puram) sumere to assume the toga virilis.

vestem ponere 225 (exuere) to undress.

4. Food—Drink

cibum sumere, capere to take food.
cibum concoquere, conficere to digest food.

multi cibi esse, edacem esse to be a great eater.
cibum apponere, ponere alicui to set food before a person.
corpus curare (cibo, vino, somno) to refresh oneself, minister to one's bodily wants.

ventri deditum esse to be the slave of one's appetite.

cibo se abstinere to abstain from all nourishment.

ieiunium servare to fast.
tantum cibi et potionis adhibere quantum satis est to take only enough food to support life.
cibus delicatus delicacies.

panis cibarius ordinary bread.
vino deditum esse, indulgere to be given to drink.
potare to drink to excess; to be a drunkard.

alicui bibere dare 226 to give some one to drink.

alicui bibere ministrare to serve some one with drink.

propino tibi hoc (poculum, salutem) bene tibi or te! I drink your health.
your health!

224 togatus = a Roman citizen as opposed to—(1) a foreigner, (2) a soldier, (3) tunicatus, which is used of the lower classes who actually had no toga but simply tunica, cf. Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 65 tunicatus popellus.

225 vestem deponere = to give up wearing a garment, never use it again. Notice too ponere arma, to put down one's weapons; ponere librum (de manibus), to lay aside a book (not deponere, which would mean to lay aside for good. Cf. viii. 9).

226 These forms dare bibere, etc., are not Graecisms but old usages which have survived in conversational language. For the infinitive (the dative of the verbal noun) used in this way compare Verg. Aen. 1. 527 non nos aut ferro Libycos populare penates venimus; Plaut. Bacc. iv. 3. 18 parasitus modo venerat aurum petere.
inter pocula whilst drinking; at table.
exhaurire poculum to empty a cup at a draught.

5. Subsistence in General

victus cotidianus daily bread.
victus tenuis (Fin. 2. 28. 90) meagre diet.
res ad vitam necessariae the necessaries of life.
qua ad victum pertinent the necessaries of life.
res ad victum cultumque necessariae things indispensable to a life of comfort.
vitae commoditas iucunditasque comfort
omnes ad vitam copias suppetitare alicui to provide some one with a livelihood.
quae suppetitare (Off. 1. 4. 12) his means suffice to defray daily expenses.
copiae cotidianis sumptibus suppetunt (vid. sect. IV. 2, note suppetitare...) to earn a livelihood by something.
vivere carne, piscibus, rapto (Liv. 7. 25) to live on meat, fish, by plunder.
de suo (opp. alieno) vivere to live on one's means.
vitam (inopem) tolerare (B. G. 7. 77) to endure a life of privation.
on habeo, qui (unde) vivam I have no means, no livelihood.
lauter vivere (Nep. Chab. 3. 2) to live well.

6. Expenditure—Luxury—Prodigality

sumptum facere, insumere in aliquid to spend money on an object.
sumptus effusi (vid. sect. IX. 2, note Cf. effusa fuga...) or profusi prodigal expenditure.
sumptui parcare (Fam. 16. 4) to incur few expenses.
sumptibus modum statuere to limit one's expenditure.
sumptum minuere to retrench.
sumptus perpetui (Off. 2. 12. 42) current expenses.
sumptus liberales (Off. 2. 12. 42) munificence.
delicate ac molliter vivere to live a luxurious and effeminate life.
luxuria diffuere (Off. 1. 30. 106) to be abandoned to a life of excess.
omnium rerum copia diffuere to be abandoned to a life of excess.
in luxuriam effundere to plunge into excesses, a career of excess.
effundere, profundere pecuniam, to squander one's money, one's patrimony.
dissipare rem familiarem (suam) to squander all one's property.
lacerare bona sua (Verr. 3. 70. 164) to squander all one's property.

7. Hospitality

convivium instruere, apparare, ornare (magnifice, splendidie) to prepare, give a feast, dinner.
mensas exquisitissimis epulis instruere to load the tables with the most exquisite viands.

Not bene vivere, which is used of leading a moral life.
mensae exstructae
caput cesa (Fin. 2, 8, 25)
secunda mensa (Att. 14. 6. 2)
ab ovo usque ad mala (proverb.)
aliquem vocare, invitare ad cesa
promittere (ad cesa) (Off. 3. 14. 58)
inter cesa, inter epulas
promittere ad aliquem
condicere alicui (ad cesa)

adhibere aliquem cesa or ad cesa, convivio or in convivium
cesam alicui apponere
convivia tempestiva (Arch. 6. 13)
accipere aliquem (bene, copiose, laute, elegantar, regio apparatu, apparatis epulis)
 deveri ad aliquem (ad [in] vilam)
 deversari apud aliquem (Att. 6. 1. 25)

mihi cum illo hospitium est, intercedit
hospitio alicuius uti
hospitium cum aliquo facere, (con-)iungere
hospitio aliquem accipere or excipere
(domum ad se)
hospitium renuntiare (Liv. 25. 18)
domus patet, aperta est mihi
invitare aliquem tecto ac domo or domum
suam (Liv. 3. 14. 5)

8. Sociability—Intercourse—Isolation

vitae societas
facilitas, faciles mores (De Am. 3. 11)
societatem inire, facere cum aliquo
dissipatos homines in (ad) societatem vitae
convocare (Tusc. 1. 25. 62)
socium se adiungere alicui
aliquem socium admittere
assiduum esse cum aliquo
uti aliquo (familiariter)
alicuius familiaritate uti
usu, familiaritate, consuetudine coniunctum
esse cum aliquo
est mihi consuetudo, or usus cum aliquo
vivere cum aliquo
vetus usus inter nos intercedit

a table bountifully spread.
the main dish.
the dessert.
from beginning to end.
to invite some one to dinner.
to accept an invitation to dinner.
during dinner; at table.
to promise to dine with a person.
to invite oneself to some one's house for dinner.
to welcome some one to one's table.
to set a repast before a person.
a repast which begins in good time.
to entertain, regale a person.
to go to a man's house as his guest.
to stop with a person, be his guest for a short time when travelling.
my relations with him are most hospitable.
to enjoy a person's hospitality.
to become a friend and guest of a person.
to welcome a man as a guest in one's house.
to sever (previous) hospitable relations.
I am always welcome at his house.
to invite some one to one's house.

social life.
a sociable, affable disposition.
to associate with some one.
to unite isolated individuals into a society.
to attach oneself to a person's society.
to admit a person into one's society.
to be always in some one's company.
to be on intimate terms with some one.
to be on friendly terms with some one.
to be on friendly terms with a person.
to be on friendly terms with a person.
we have known each other well for several years.

228 Lit. "from the egg to the apples," i.e. throughout the dinner; cf. integram famem ad ovum affero (Fam. 9. 20. 1).
229 The adj. socialis in the sense of "sociable" only occurs in late Latin, e.g. homo sociale animal (Sen.)
devincire aliquem consuetudine
to attach a person to oneself.
se dare in consuetudinem alicuius
to devote oneself to a person's society.
se insinuare in consuetudinem alicuius (Fam. 4. 13. 6)
to insinuate oneself into a person's society.
summa necessitudine aliquem contingere
to stand in very intimate relations to some one.
in simulatate cum aliquo sum
relations are strained between us.
hominum coetus, congressus fugere
to shun society.
in solitudine vivere (Fin. 3. 20. 65)
to live in solitude.
secum vivere
to live to oneself.
vitam solitariam agere
to live a lonely life.

9. Conversation—Audience—Conference

sermonem conferre,
itinstituere, ordiri cum aliquo
to enter into conversation with some one.
se dare in sermonem cum aliquo
sermonem inferre de aliqua re
in eum sermonem incidere, qui tum fere multis erat in ore
sermo incidit de aliqua re
sermo ortus est ab aliqua re
sermonem alio transferre
medium sermonem abrumpere (Verg. Aen. 4. 388)
sermonem producere in multam noctem (Rep. 6. 10. 10)
sermonem habere cum aliquo de aliqua re (De Am. 1. 3)
hinc sermo ductus est
sermo inductus a tali exordio
multus sermo
narratio, fabula
narratiuncula, fabella (Fin. 5. 15)
haec fabula docet
convenire aliquem
congredi cum aliquo
sui potestatem facere, praebere alicui
colloquendi copiam facere, dare
conveniendi aditum dare alicui

230 sermonem conserere in late Latin.
231 Distinguish from such phrases as incidere in sermonem (hominum), to become common talk.
232 audientia is not used in this connection, but only in such phrases as audientiam facere alicui or orationi alicuius, to procure a hearing.
233 Transcriber's Note: The original text has indeed "to listen to a person" instead of "to procure a hearing". The French edition gives "prêter l'oreille, écouter quelqu'un". Both are wrong because the
10. Greeting—Farewell

salutem alicui dicere, impertire, nuntiare
aliquem salvere iubere (Att. 4. 14)
quid agis? quid agitum?

Cicero Attico 236 S.D.P. (salutem dicit plurimam)
tibi plurimam salutem
nuntia fratri tuo salutem verbis meis (Fam. 7. 14)
adscribere alicui salutem (Att. 5. 20. 9)
salute data (accepta) redditaque
inter se consalutare (De Or. 2. 3. 13)
dextram alicui porrigere, dare
dextram iungere cum aliquo, dextras inter se iungere
tei valere 237 iubeo
vale or cura ut valeas
bene ambula et redambula
gratulari alicui alicui aliquid or de aliqua re
to add to one’s letter good wishes to some one.
after mutual greeting.
to give one’s right hand to some one.
to shake hands with a person.
I bid you good-bye, take my leave.
good-bye; farewell.
a safe journey to you.
to congratulate a person on something.

11. Betrothal—Marriage—Divorce

filiam alicui despondere
sibi (aliquam) despondere (of the man)
nuptias conciliare (Nep. Att. 5. 3)
to betroth one’s daughter to some one.
to betroth oneself, get engaged.
to arrange a marriage.

original German footnote says: “Es ist nicht hierfür audientia zu gebrauchen, welches Wort nur in der Redensart audientiam facere alicui oder orationi alicuius einem ‘Gehör verschaffen’, vorkommt.” Compare also Lewis & Short, „A Latin Dictionary“, entry „audientia“.

colloquium as opposed to sermo means an interview specially arranged, usually for transaction of some business.

quid agis? is also used as an expression of surprise, “what are you thinking of?”

evoice alicui is poetical.
nuptias parare (Phil. 2. 38. 99) to make preparations for a marriage.
condicio (uxoria) to a match.
ducere uxorem to marry (of the man).
ducere aliquam in matrimonium to marry (of the man).
nubere alicui to be married to some one.
nuptam esse cum aliquo or alicui to be married to some one.
uxorem habere (Verr. 3. 33. 76) to be a married man.
dotem filiae dare to give a dowry to one's daughter.
filiam alicui in matrimonio or in matrimonium to give one's daughter in marriage to someone.
collocare or simply filiam alicui collocare to give one's daughter in marriage to someone.
filiam alicui in matrimonium dare to give one's daughter in marriage to someone.
nuntium remittere alicui (De Or. 1. 40) to separate, be divorced (used of man or woman).
repudium dicere or scribere alicui to separate, be divorced (used of man or woman).
divorium facere cum uxore to separate from, divorce (of the man).
alicuam suas res sibi habere iubere (Phil. 2. 28. 69) to separate from, divorce (of the woman).
repudium remittere viro (Dig. 24. 3) to separate (of the woman).

12. Will—I Inheritance

testamentum facere, conscribere to make a will.
testamentum obsignare (B. G. 1. 39) to sign a will.
testamentum resignare to open a will.
testamentum rescindere to declare a will to be null and void.
testamentum subicere, supponere to produce a false will.
testamento aliquud cavere (Fin. 2. 31) to annul, revoke a will.
pecuniam alicui legare to prescribe in one's will.
alicuam heredem testamento scribere, facere the last wishes of a deceased person.
heredem esse alicui to be some one's heir.
hereditate aliquid accipere to inherit something.
hereditatem paternorum bonorum (De Or. 1. 38. 175) disinherited.
exheredari a patre to be disinherited.
exheredari a patre somthing has been left as a legacy by some one.
testamento aliud relictum est ab aliquo hereditas ad me or mihi venit ab aliquo I have received a legacy from a person.
hereditas ad me or mihi venit ab aliquo (Verr. 2. 1. 10)

238 The formula of divorce used by the man was tuas res tibi habeto, cf. Plaut. Trin. 266.
239 Cicero uses divorium not repudium. Divorium (dis, vertere) is a separation by mutual consent, divorium est, quod in diversas partes eunt, qui discendunt (Paul. Dig. L. 16. 1. 161). In repudium one party takes the initiative, usually the husband. The formula commonly used was tua condicione non utar.
hereditatem adire, cernere
heres ex asse, ex dodrant

heres ex besse
to take possession of an inheritance.
sole heir; heir to three-quarters of the estate.
heir to two-thirds of the property.

13. Custom—Usage

assuefactus \(^{240}\) or assuetus aliqua re
in consuetudinem or morem venire
in nostros mores inducere aliquid \(\text{De Or. 2, 28}\)
consuetudinem suam tenere, retinere, servare
consuetudo inveterascit \(\text{B. G. 5. 41. 5}\)
res obsolescit

a vetere consuetudine discedere
a pristina consuetudine deflectere
in pristinam consuetudinem revocare aliquid
aliquid cadit in meam consuetudinem
mos (moris) est, ut \(\text{Brut. 21. 84}\)
more, usu receptum est
ut fit, ita ut fit, ut fere fit
ut solet, ut fieri solet
ita fert consuetudo
ex consuetudine mea (opp. praeter consuetudinem)
more institutoque maiorum \(\text{Mur. 1. 1}\)
ex instituto \(\text{Liv. 6. 10. 6}\)

accustomed to a thing.
to become customary, the fashion.
to introduce a thing into our customs; to familiarise us with a thing.
to keep up a usage.
a custom is taking root, growing up.
a thing is going out of use, becoming obsolete.
to give up old customs.
to give up old customs.
to return to ancient usage.
it is my custom.
it is my custom.
it is customary to...
it is traditional usage.
as usually happens.
as usually happens.
so custom, fashion prescribes.
according to my custom.
according to the custom and tradition of my fathers.
according to traditional usage.

XIII. Commerce and Agriculture

1. Commerce in General—Purchase—Price

negotiatores \(^{242}\) \(\text{Verr. 2. 69. 168}\)
homines negotii \(\text{always in sing.}\) gerentes
negotii bene gerentes \(\text{Quint. 19. 62}\)
business-men.
business-men.
good men of business.

\(^{240}\) Note assuescere, to accustom oneself to .... and assuefacere aliquem, to accustom some one else to...

\(^{241}\) Transcriber's Note: the original text has retineri. But that is wrong as can be seen from the French edition using retinere.

\(^{242}\) The usual term for men of business are negotiator, mercator, caupo, institor. The first two are used of merchants, wholesale dealers, negotiator especially when talking of the transactions (negotia) of business, mercator with reference to the profits (merces). caupo is a retail dealer, tradesman, shopkeeper; institor, a pedlar, commercial traveller.
negotium obire or exsequi

to be engaged upon a transaction, carry it out.

negotium (rem) conficere, absolvere
mercaturam facere

to settle, finish a transaction.
to be engaged in commerce, wholesale business.

negotia habere (in Sicilia)

contrahere rem or negotium cum aliquo
(Cluent. 14. 41)

transigere aliquid (de aliqua re) cum aliquo
or inter se

nihil cum aliquo contrahere
quaestum facere (Fam. 15. 14)
quaestui aliquid habere (Off. 2. 3. 13)
res, quae importantur et exportantur
exponere, proponere merces (venales)
parvo, vili pretio or bene emere
magnus or male emere
aliquid magno, parvo stat, constat
aliquid nihil or gratis constat
pretium alicui rei statuere, constituere (Att.
13. 22)

to transact, settle a matter with some one.
to do no business with a man.
to make money.
to make a profit out of something.
imports and exports.
to set out goods for sale.
to buy cheaply.
to buy dearly.
a thing costs much, little.
a thing costs nothing.
to fix a price for a thing.

2. Money—Interest—Loans

pecunia magna, \textsuperscript{243} grandis (multum pecuniae)
pecunia exigua or tenuis
pecunia praeens (vid. sect. V. 9, note
Notice too... or numerata
aes (argentum) signatum
argentum (factum) (Verr. 5. 25. 63)
nummi adulterini
pecuniam erogare (in classem)
pecuniam insumere in aliquid or consumere
in aliqua re
pecuniam numerare alicui (Att. 16. 16)
pecuniam solvere
pecuniam alicui debere
pecuniam alicui credere (sine fenore, usuris)
pecuniam fenore (fenore) alicui dare,
accipere ab aliquo
pecuniam fenore occupare (Flacc. 21. 54)
pecuniam collocare \textsuperscript{244} in aliqua re
pecuniam iacet otiosa
pecuniam mutuari or sumere mutuam ab
aliquo
pecuniam alicui mutuam dare
pecuniam creditam solvere

much money.
little money.
cash; ready money.
coined money; bullion.
silver plate.
bad money; base coin.
to spend money.
to devote money to a purpose.
to pay cash.
to pay money.
to owe some one money.
to lend some one money (without interest).
to lend, borrow money at interest.
to put out money at interest.
to put money in an undertaking.
the money is bringing in no interest, lies idle.
to borrow money from some one.
to lend money to some one.
to repay a loan.

\textsuperscript{243} In plur. magnae, multae pecuniae = large sums of money.

\textsuperscript{244} Sometimes absolutely, e.g. Cic. Off. 2. 25. 90 pecuniam collocare.
non solvendo esse (Phil. 2. 2. 4) to be bankrupt.
pecuniam exigere (acerbe) to demand payment.
magnas pecunias ex aliqua re (e.g. ex metallis) facere to have a large income from a thing (e.g. from mines).
nummus iactatur (Off. 3. 20. 80) the bank-rate varies.
versuram facere (Att. 5. 21. 12) to transfer a debt.
nommulis acceptis (Att. 1. 16. 6) for a trifle, a beggarly pittance.

3. Money-Matters—Accounts—Audit

res nummaria or pecuniaria finance; money-matters.
ratio pecuniarium finance; money-matters.
argentarium facere (Verr. 5. 59. 155) to be a banker.
argentarium dissolvere (Caecin. 4. 11) to close one's bank, give up banking.
codex or tabulae ratio accepti et expensi account-book; ledger.
nomina facere or in tabulas referre to book a debt.
pecunia in nominibus est money is outstanding, unpaid.
alicui expensum ferre aliquid to put a thing down to a man's account.
nummus iactatur (Off. 3. 20. 80) the bank-rate varies.
versuram facere (Att. 5. 21. 12) to transfer a debt.
nommulis acceptis (Att. 1. 16. 6) for a trifle, a beggarly pittance.

ad calculos vocare aliquid (Amic. 16. 58)
inita subductaque ratione aliquid facere to go through accounts, make a valuation of a thing.
raciones putare cum aliquo to balance accounts with some one.
ratio alculii rei constat (convenit, par est) the accounts balance.
ratio acceptorum et datorum (accepti et expensi) (Amic. 16. 58) the account of receipts and expenditure.
rationem diligenter conficere to keep the accounts (day-book) carefully.
summam facere alculii rei to compute the total of anything.
de capite deducere (vid. sect. XII. 1, note Notice too... aliiquid to subtract something from the capital.
rationem alculii rei reddere to render count of a matter; to pass it for audit.
rationem alculii rei reposcere aliquem or ab aliquo to demand an account, an audit of a matter.
rationem ab aliquo reptere de aliqua re to demand an account, an audit of a matter.

non solvendo 245 esse (Phil. 2. 2. 4) to be bankrupt.
pecuniam exigere (acerbe) to demand payment.
magnas pecunias ex aliqua re (e.g. ex metallis) facere to have a large income from a thing (e.g. from mines).
nummus iactatur (Off. 3. 20. 80) the bank-rate varies.
versuram facere (Att. 5. 21. 12) to transfer a debt.
nommulis acceptis (Att. 1. 16. 6) for a trifle, a beggarly pittance.

3. Money-Matters—Accounts—Audit

res nummaria or pecuniaria finance; money-matters.
ratio pecuniarium finance; money-matters.
argentarium facere (Verr. 5. 59. 155) to be a banker.
argentarium dissolvere (Caecin. 4. 11) to close one's bank, give up banking.
codex or tabulae ratio accepti et expensi account-book; ledger.
nomina facere or in tabulas referre to book a debt.
pecunia in nominibus est money is outstanding, unpaid.
alicui expensum ferre aliquid to put a thing down to a man's account.
nummus iactatur (Off. 3. 20. 80) the bank-rate varies.
versuram facere (Att. 5. 21. 12) to transfer a debt.
nommulis acceptis (Att. 1. 16. 6) for a trifle, a beggarly pittance.

ad calculos vocare aliquid (Amic. 16. 58)
inita subductaque ratione aliquid facere to go through accounts, make a valuation of a thing.
raciones putare cum aliquo to balance accounts with some one.
ratio alculii rei constat (convenit, par est) the accounts balance.
ratio acceptorum et datorum (accepti et expensi) (Amic. 16. 58) the account of receipts and expenditure.
rationem diligenter conficere to keep the accounts (day-book) carefully.
summam facere alculii rei to compute the total of anything.
de capite deducere (vid. sect. XII. 1, note Notice too... aliiquid to subtract something from the capital.
rationem alculii rei reddere to render count of a matter; to pass it for audit.
rationem alculii rei reposcere aliquem or ab aliquo to demand an account, an audit of a matter.
rationem ab aliquo reptere de aliqua re to demand an account, an audit of a matter.

245 solvendo is a predicative dative. For the development of such uses cf. nulli rei erimus postea (Plaut. Stich. 718); Ovid Met. 15. 403 dedit huic aetas vires onerique ferendo est; Liv. 4. 35 experienda res est sitne aliqui plebeius ferendo magno honor.
246 nomina are properly the sums entered in the ledger as due from a person. Hence nomen solvere, dissolvere, to pay a debt; nomen expendere, exsolvere, to get rid of a debt; bonum nomen, a safe investment (Cic. Fam. 5. 6. 2).
247 Also used metaphorically to "owe a thing to another's instrumentality," e.g. quod vivo tibi acceptum refero.
248 The original meaning of putare is to prune (cf. purus, amputare), cleanse by cutting off, then make clear, calculate, reckon. By a transference it became used of calculation, i.e. thinking, believing. Compare the history of the French raisonner and the Italian ragioneria.
4. Rate of Interest

centesimae (sc. usurae) (Att. 5. 21. 11) interest at 1 per cent per month, 12 per cent per annum.
binis centesimis fenerari to lend at 24 per cent.
ternae centesimae 36 per cent per annum.
quaternas centesimas postulare (Att. 5. 21. 11) to demand 48 per cent.
semisses 6 per cent (i.e. if for 100 denarii, asses, one pays half a denarius, half an as per month).

semissibus magna copia est money is plentiful at 6 per cent.
usurae semissium (Colum.) 6 per cent.
usurae semisses (Jurists)
quadrantes usurae 3 per cent (a quarter of centesima).
trientes or trientariae usurae (Att. 4. 15) 4 per cent.
quincunx (Pers. 5. 149) 5 per cent.
quincunces usurae 5 per cent.

fenus ex triente Id. Quint. factum erat the rate of interest has gone up from 4 per cent to 8 per cent.
bessibus (Att. 4. 15. 7) simple interests.
perpetuum fenus (Att. 5. 21. 13) compound interest.
anatocismus (ἁνατοκισμός) (Att. 5. 21. 11) compound interest.
fenus iniquissimum, grande, grave exorbitant rate of interest.

5. Profit—Credit—Debt

lucrum facere (opp. damnum facere) ex aliqua re to make profit out of a thing.
in lucro ponere aliquid (Flacc. 17. 40) to consider a thing as profit.
debitor, or is qui debet the debtor.
creditor, or is cui debo the creditor.
fides et ratio pecuniarum credit and financial position.
fides (vid. sect. IX. 10, note fides has six...) credit is going down.
con cidit
fidem derogare alciui to rob a person of his credit.
fides aliquem deficere coepit a man's credit begins to go down.
fides (de foro) sublata est (Leg. Agr. 2. 3. 8) credit has disappeared.
fides tota Italia est angusta credit is low throughout Italy.
fidem moliri (Liv. 6. 11. 8) to shake credit.
laborare de pecunia to have pecuniary difficulties.
in summa difficultate nummariar versari to be in severe pecuniary straits.

Transcriber's Note: The Latin expression means „at 2 percent per month“ which amounts to 24 percent per year (Cp. French edition).
(Verr. 2. 28. 69)
in maximas angustias (pecuniae) adduci to be reduced to extreme financial embarssament.
aes alienum (always in sing.) facere, contrahere to incur debts.
grande, magnum (opp. exiguum) aes to incur debts on a large scale.
alia num conflare
incidere in aes alienum to get into debt.
aes alienum habere to be in debt.
in aere alieno esse to be in debt.
aes alienum dissolvere, exsolvere, exsolvere to pay one's debts.
omina (cf. sect. XIII. 3) solvere, dissolvere, exsolvere to pay one's debts.
omina exigere (Verr. 3. 10. 28) to demand payment of, recover debts.
ex aere alieno exire to get out of debt.
aere alieno liberari to get out of debt.
versurā solvere, dissolvere (Att. 5. 15. 2) to pay one's old debts by making new.

6. Building

opus locare to contract for the building of something.
opus redimere, conducere to undertake the contract for a work.
domum aedificandam locare, conducere to give, undertake a contract for building a house.
eaedificatorem esse (Nep. Att. 13. 1) to be fond of building.
exstruere aedificium, monumentum to erect a building, a monument.
fundamenta iacere, agere to lay the foundations.
turrim excitare, erigere, facere to build a tower.
oppidum constituere, condere to build, found a city.
pontem facere in flumine to build a bridge over a river.
inicere pontem to build a bridge over a river.
flumen ponte iungere to build a bridge over a river.
pons est in flumine there is a bridge over the river.
pontem dissolvere, rescindere, interscindere to break down a bridge.
luminibus alicuius obstruere, officere to obstruct a person's view, shut out his light by building.

7. Agriculture—Management of Stock

agrum colere (Leg. Agr. 2. 25. 67) to till the ground.
agros fertiles deserere to leave fertile ground untilled.
agriculturae studere (opp. agriculturam deserere) to have a taste for agriculture.
opus rusticum tillage; cultivation.
in agris esse, habitare to live in the country.

250 Also used metaphorically to overshadow, eclipse a person, cf. vi. 1.
serere; semen spargere

to sow.

sementem facere (B. G. 1. 3. 1)
to look after the sowing.

ut sementem feceris, ita metes (proverb.)
as you sow, so will you reap.

(De Or. 2. 65)

laetae segetes

the laughing cornfields.

laetissimi flores (Verr. 4. 48. 107)
a glorious expanse of flowers.

odores, qui efflantur e floribus

the perfume exhaled by flowers.

messis in herbis est (Liv. 25. 15)
the crop is in the blade.

adhuc tua messis in herba est (proverb.)
your crop is still green, i.e. you are still far from your ambition.

frumenta in agris matura non sunt (B. G. 1. 16. 2)
to reap.

to reap.

fructus demetere or percipere
to harvest crops.

fructus condere (N. D. 2. 62. 156)
a good harvest.

messis opima (opp. ingrata)
to plant trees.

arbores serere (De Sen. 7. 24)
to fell trees.

arbores caedere

want of corn; scarcity in the corn-market.

difficultas annonae (Imp. Pomp. 15. 44)
want of corn; scarcity in the corn-market.

annona ingravescit, crescit

the price of corn is going up.

annona laxatur, levatur, vilior fit

the price of corn is going down.

caritas annonae (opp. vilitas), also simply

dearth of corn; high prices.

ad denarios 251 L in singulos modios annona

corn had gone up to 50 denarii the bushel.

perveneart

corn is dear.

annona cara est

when corn is as dear as it is.

to rear stock.

hac annona (Plaut. Trin. 2. 4. 83)
to drive to pasture.

rem pecuariam facere, exercere (cf. Varr. R. 2. 1)
to go to pasture.

pastum agere
to feed a flock (of goats).

pastum ire

the herds are grazing.

pascere gregem
to keep horses, dogs.

greges pascuntur 252 (Verg. G. 3. 162)
domestic animals.

alere equos, canes

animalia quae nobiscum degunt (Plin. 8. 40)

XIV. The State

1. Constitution—Administration—Government

forma rei publicae

the constitution.

descriptio civitatis

the constitution.

instituta et leges

the constitution.

rem publicam constitueere 253

to give the state a constitution.

251 denarius = about 9 1/2d., vid. Gow, Companion to School Classics, p. 149.

252 pascere and pasci are also used metaphorically, vid. iii. s. v. oculi.

253 Cf. tres viri rei publicae constituendae.
rem publicam legibus et institutis temperare
(Tusc. 1. 1. 2)

to give the state a constitution.

civitati leges, iudicia, iura describere
nullam habere rem publicam
rem publicam in pristinum statum restituere
optima re publica

to give the state a constitution.
(a state) has its own laws, is autonomous.
to have no constitution, be in anarchy.
to restore the ancient constitution.
at the time of a most satisfactory government.
the Republic.
to govern, administer the state.
to have the management of the state.
to hold the reins of government.

libera res publica, liber populus
rem publicam gerere, administrare, regere,
reis publicis praeesse

rem publicam capessere (Off. 1. 21. 71)

to devote oneself to politics, a political career.
to take part in politics.
to take no part in politics.
to retire from public life.
to retire from public life.
to retire into private life.
private life.
to shun publicity.
to shun publicity.
to defend, strengthen the state.
the state is secure.
to aggrandise, extend the power of the state.
to further the common weal.
for political reasons.
for the advantage of the state; in the interests of the state.
the welfare of the state.
the interests of the state.
to further the public interests.
to consider a thing from a political point of view.
to devote one’s every thought to the state’s welfare.
to devote one’s every thought to the state’s
to have the management of the state.
to hold the reins of government.
conferre  
*omnes curas in rei publicae salute defigere*  
(Phil. 14. 5. 13)

totum et animo et corpore in salutem rei publicae se conferre  
bene, *optime sentire de re publica*  
omnia de re publica praecella atque egeria sentire  
*rector civitatis* (De Or. 1. 48. 211)  
viri rerum civilium, *rei publicae gerendae periti* or *viri in re publica prudentes*  
auctores consilii publici  
principes rem publicam administrantes or simply *principes*  
*prudentia* (civilis) (De Or. 1. 19. 85)  
homo in re publica exercitatus  
res civiles  
plus in re publica videre  
longe prospicere futuros casus rei publicae  
(De Amic. 12. 40)  
*alicuius in re publica* or *caepessendae rei publicae consilia eo spectant, ut...*  
rei publicae muneriouis orbatus  
gerendis negotiis orbatus (Fin. 5. 20. 57)

**2. Civil Rights—Rank**

civitate donare aliquem (Balb. 3. 7)  
in civitatem recipere, ascribere, asciscere aliquem  
civitatem alicui dare, tribuere, impertire  
civitatem mutare (Balb. 11. 27)  
generis antiquitate florere  
nobilitati favere (Sest. 9. 21)  
nobilitatis fautorem, studiosum esse  
homo novus  
ordo senatorius (amplissimus)  
ordo equester (splendidissimus)  
summo loco natus  
nobili, honesto, illustri loco or genere natus  
humili, obscuro loco natus  
humilibus (obscurs) parentibus natus  
infinio loco natus  
equestri loco natus or ortus  
summi (et) infimi (Rep. 1. 34. 53)  
homines omnis generis

welfare.  
to devote one's every thought to the state's welfare.  
to devote oneself body and soul to the good of the state.  
to have the good of the state at heart.  
to have the good of the state at heart.  
the head of the state.  
statesmen.  
statesmen.  
statesmen.  
statesmanship; political wisdom.  
an experienced politician.  
political questions.  
to foresee political events long before.  
a man's policy is aiming at, directed towards...  
banished from public life.  
banished from public life.

to make a man a citizen.  
to enroll as a citizen, burgess.  
to present a person with the freedom of the city.  
to naturalise oneself as a citizen of another country.  
to be of noble family.  
to be a friend of the aristocracy.  
to be a friend of the aristocracy.  
a parvenu (a man no member of whose family has held curule office).  
the senatorial order.  
the equestrian order; the knights.  
of high rank.  
of illustrious family.  
of humble, obscure origin.  
of humble, obscure origin.  
from the lowest classes.  
a knight by birth.  
high and low.  
people of every rank.

---

255 A *novus homo* by taking office becomes for his descendants *princeps nobilitatis* (Cic. Brut. 14) or *auctor generis* (Leg. Agr. 2. 35).
people of every rank and age.

one of the people.

to get oneself admitted as a plebeian.

to transfer oneself from the patrician to the plebeian order.

to transfer oneself from the patrician to the plebeian order.

one of the crowd; a mere individual.

the dregs of the people.

a degraded, servile condition.

an ordinary, average Roman citizen.

3. Dignity—Position—Honours—Pre-Eminence—(cf. v. 17)

to guard, maintain one's dignity.

to be careful of one's dignity.

to elevate to the highest dignity.

to occupy the first, second position in the state.

to occupy a very high position in the state.

to depose, bring down a person from his elevated position.

to overthrow a person (cf. sect. IX. 6).

to overthrow a person (cf. sect. IX. 6).

to attain a position of dignity.

to rise, mount to the honours of office.

to attain to the highest offices.

a man who has held every office (up to the consulship).

to occupy the leading position.

deposed from one's high position.

to contend with some one for the pre-eminence.

to give the palm, the first place (for wisdom) to some one.

4. Public Meetings—Suffrage

to summon an assembly of the people.

to summon an assembly of the people.
agere cum populo \(^{256}\) (Leg. 3. 4. 10)  
concilium indicere, habere, dimittere  
comitia habere  
comitia magistratibus creandis  
comitis (Abl.) convenire  
comitiis consulem creari  
suffragium ferre (vid. sect. VI. 4, note Not sententiam...)  
multitudinis suffragiis rem permittere  

5. Laws—Bills

legem, rogationem \(^{257}\) promulgare (Liv. 33. 46)  
legem ferre or simply ferre ad populum, ut...  
legem suadere (opp. dissuadere)  
pro lege dicere  
legem rogare or rogare populum (cf. sect. XVI. 4, note Aulus Gellius...)  
legem perferre (Liv. 33. 46)  
lex perfertur  
legem antiquare \(^{258}\) (opp. accipere, iubere)  
legem sciscere (Planc. 14. 35)  
legem iubere  
legem sanire  
Solo lege sanxit, ut or ne  
Solonis legibus sanctum erat, ut or ne  
legem abrogare \(^{259}\) (Att. 3. 23. 2)  
legem tollere (Leg. 2. 12. 31)  
legi intercedere  
legem proponere in publicum  
edictum proponere (Att. 2. 21. 4)  
legem in aes incidere  

to submit a formal proposition to the people.  
to fix the day for, to hold, to dismiss a meeting.  
to hold a meeting of the people.  
meetings for the election of officers.  
to meet for elections.  
to be chosen consul at the elections.  
to vote (in the popular assembly).  
to leave a matter to be decided by popular vote.  

to bring a bill before the notice of the people.  
to propose a law in the popular assembly.  
to support a bill (before the people).  
to support a bill (before the people).  
to formally propose a law to the people.  
to carry a law (said of the magistrate).  
a law is adopted.  
to reject a bill.  
to vote for a law.  
to ratify a law (used of the people).  
to let a bill become law (of the people and senate).  
Solo ordained by law that...  
the laws of Solon ordained that...  
to replace an old law by a new.  
to abolish a law.  
to protest against a law (used of the veto, intercessio, of plebeian tribunes).  
to bring a law before the notice of the people.  
to publish, post up an edict.  
to engrave a law upon a brazen tablet.  

\(^{256}\) Aulus Gellius (13. 16. 3) explains the difference between cum populo agere and contionem habere; the former = rogare quid populum quod suffragiis suis aut iubeat aut vetet. Cf. Liv. 22. 10. 2 velitis iubeatisne haec sic fieri? also 21. 17. 4. habere contionem (conventio = countio = contio) is equivalent to verba facere ad populum sine uilla rogatione.  

\(^{257}\) A rogatio had to be posted up in some public place for trinum nundinum (tempus) (Phil. 5. 3. 8), i.e. for seventeen days, nundinae (novem, dies) being a holiday, fair, held every ninth day.  

\(^{258}\) On the voting-tablets (tabellae) used in the comitia was written either A (antiquo) to reject the bill, V * R (uti rogas) to pass it; in judicial questions A (absolvo), C (condemno), N * L (non liquet).  

\(^{259}\) legi or de lege derogare = to reject a clause in it; legem abrogare, to nullify a law by passing another which contradicts it; multam, poenam inrogare alciui, to inflict a fine on some one with the approval of the people; pecuniam erogare (ex aerario in classem), to draw money from the treasury and distribute it according to the wishes of the people.
lex rata est (opp. irrita)
legem ratam esse iubere
a lege discedere
salvis legibus (vid. sect. X. 7, note Notice...)
lex jubet, vetat (dilucide, planissime)
in lege scriptum est, or simply est sententia or voluntas legis
leges scribere, facere, condere, constituere (not dare)
legum scriptor, conditor, inventor
qui leges scribit (not legum lator)
in legem iurare (Sest. 16. 37)
lege teneri
legibus solvere
ea lege, ut
aliquid contra legem est
acta rescindere, dissolvere (Phil. 13. 3. 5)
in album referre (De Or. 2. 12. 52)

lex is often personified in this way.
legis lator = the man who proposes a law.

6. Popular Favour—Influence—Unpopularity

aura favoris popularis (Liv. 22. 26)
populi favor, gratia popularis
aura popularis (Harusp. 18. 43)
auram popularem captare (Liv. 3. 33)
gratiam populi quaerere
aurae popularis homo (Liv. 42. 30)
ventum popularem quendam (in aliqua re) quaerere
gratiosum esse (opp. invisum esse)
opibus, gratia, auctoritate valere, flore
opes, gratiam, potentiam consequi
gratiam inire apud aliquem, ab aliquo (cf. sect. V. 12)
crescere ex aliquo
crescere ex invidia senatoria

iacère (vid. sect. VII. 1, note iacère...)
existimatio populi, hominum
multum communi hominum opinioni tribuere
invidia
offensio populi, popularis
offensa populi voluntas
invidia dictatoria (Liv. 22. 26)
ex invidia alicuius auram popularem petere (Liv. 22. 26)

popular favour; popularity.
to court popularity.
to strive to gain popular favour by certain means.
to be popular, influential.
to have great influence.
to gain one's favour.
to raise oneself by another's fall.
to profit by the unpopularity of the senate to gain influence oneself.
to be politically annihilated.
public opinion.
to be always considering what people think.
unpopularity.
unpopularity.
the feeling against the dictator.
to use some one's unpopularity as a means of making oneself popular.

260 lex is often personified in this way.
261 legis lator = the man who proposes a law.

partes (usually of plebeians) a party; faction.
factio (of aristocrats) party-spirit.
partium studium, also simply studia partium studiis esse to be a strong partisan.
partium studiosum esse party-strife.
certamen partium to be torn by faction.
contentio partium (Phil. 5. 12. 32) a political ally.
partium studium, also simply studia partium studiis esse to embrace the cause of..., be a partisan of...
partium studiis divisum esse to embrace the cause of..., be a partisan of...
alicuius partes (causam) or simply aliquem sequi to be on a person's side (not ab alicuius partibus).
alicuius partibus studere to be a follower of some one.
alicuius studiis esse to take some one's side.
alicuius studiis esse to be neutral.
alicuius studiis esse to be neutral.
alicuius studiis esse to be neutral.
alicuius studiis esse to be neutral.
alicuius studiis esse an independent spirit.
alicuius studiis esse to have the same political opinions.
alicuius studiis esse to hold different views in politics.
alicuius studiis esse owing to political dissension.
alicuius studiis esse to divide into two factions.
alicuius studiis esse to throw oneself heart and soul into politics.
alicuius studiis esse to enter the whirlpool of political strife.
alicuius studiis esse monarchy.
alicuius studiis esse aristocracy (as a form of government).
alicuius studiis esse aristocracy (as a form of government).
alicuius studiis esse the aristocracy (as a party in politics).
alicuius studiis esse the aristocracy (as a leading class in government).
alicuius studiis esse the aristocracy (as a social class).
alicuius studiis esse oligarchy.
alicuius studiis esse government by the mob.
alicuius studiis esse patrician arrogance; pride of caste.
alicuius studiis esse men of sound opinions.
alicuius studiis esse a democrat.
alicuius studiis esse a man who genuinely wishes the people's good.
alicuius studiis esse a democratic leader.
alicuius studiis esse democracy.

ab (cum) aliquo stare (Brut. 79. 273)
alicuius studiis esse to be a follower of some one.
alicuius studiis esse to take some one's side.
alicuius studiis esse to be neutral.
alicuius studiis esse to be neutral.
alicuius studiis esse to be neutral.
alicuius studiis esse an independent spirit.
alicuius studiis esse to have the same political opinions.
alicuius studiis esse to hold different views in politics.
alicuius studiis esse owing to political dissension.
alicuius studiis esse to divide into two factions.
alicuius studiis esse to throw oneself heart and soul into politics.
alicuius studiis esse to enter the whirlpool of political strife.
alicuius studiis esse monarchy.
alicuius studiis esse aristocracy (as a form of government).
alicuius studiis esse aristocracy (as a form of government).
alicuius studiis esse the aristocracy (as a party in politics).
alicuius studiis esse the aristocracy (as a leading class in government).
alicuius studiis esse the aristocracy (as a social class).
alicuius studiis esse oligarchy.
alicuius studiis esse government by the mob.
alicuius studiis esse patrician arrogance; pride of caste.
alicuius studiis esse men of sound opinions.
alicuius studiis esse a democrat.
alicuius studiis esse a man who genuinely wishes the people's good.
alicuius studiis esse a democratic leader.
alicuius studiis esse democracy.
publica popularis
causam popularem suscipere or defendere
to take up the cause of the people, democratic principles.
populi causam agere
to be a leading spirit of the popular cause.
patriae amantem (amantissimum) esse (Att. 9. 22)
to be (very) patriotic.
mundanus, mundi civis et incola (Tusc. 5. 37)
a citizen of the world; cosmopolitan.

8. Demagogy—Revolution—Rebellion—Anarchy

plebis dux, vulgi turbator, civis turbulentus, a demagogue, agitator.
civis rerum novarum cupidus
popular agitation.
iactatio, concitatio popularis tricks of a demagogue.
apelles populariter agere to play the demagogue.
artes populares revolution.
populariter agere revolutionist.
conversio rei publicae (Div. 2. 2. 6) revolution.
homines seditiosi, turbulenti or novarum
revolutionists.
cherer cupidi

novis rebus studere
to hold revolutionary opinions.
novarum rerum cupidum esse
to hold revolutionary opinions.
novas res moliri (Verr. 2. 125)
to plot a revolution.
contra rem publicam sentire
to foster revolutionary projects.
contra rem publicam facere
to be guilty of high treason.
a re publica deficere
to betray the interests of the state.
plebem concitare, sollicitare
to stir up the lower classes.
seditionem facere, concitare
to cause a rebellion.
seditio erumpit 262 a rebellion breaks out.
conjurare (inter se) de c. Gerund. or ut... to form a conspiracy.
conurationem facere (Catil. 2. 4. 6)
to form a conspiracy.
conspirare cum aliquo (contra aliquem) to conspire with some one.
rem publicam labefactare
to shake the stability of the state.
rem publicam perturbare
to throw the state into confusion.
statum rei publicae convellere
to endanger the existence of the state.
rem publicam vexare
to damage the state.
rem publicam funditus evertere
to completely overthrow the government, the state.
onmes leges confundere
to upset the whole constitution.
omnia turbare ac miscere
to cause universal disorder.
perturbatio omnium rerum (Flacc. 37)
general confusion; anarchy.
omnia divina humanaque iura permiscensur
anarchy reigns supreme.
(B. C. 1. 6. 8)
leges nullae
lawlessness; anarchy.
judicia nulla
lawlessness; anarchy.
res fluit ad interregnum
things seem tending towards an interregnum.
non nullus odor est dictature (Att. 4. 18)
there are whispers of the appointment of a dictator.
tumultum sedare (B. C. 3. 18. 3)
to quell an outbreak.

262 But bellum exardescit, war breaks out.
concitatam multitudinem reprimere
plebem continere
to allay the excitement of the mob.
to hold the people in one's power, in check.

9. Proscription—Confiscation—Banishment—Amnesty

proscribere aliquem or alicuius possessiones
aqua et igni interdicere alicui
to proscribe a person, declare him an outlaw.
to proscribe a person, declare him an outlaw.

in proscriptorum numerum referre aliquem (Rosc. Am. 11. 32)
e proscriptorum numero eximere aliquem
to place a person's name on the list of the proscribed.
to erase a person's name from the list of the proscribed.

bona alicuius publicare (B. G. 5. 54)
bona alicui restituere
to confiscate a person's property.
to restore to a person his confiscated property.

in exsilium eicere or expellere aliquem ex urbe (civitate) expellere, pellere aliquem
de, e civitate alicuem eicere
exterminare (ex) urbe, de civitate aliquem (Mil. 37. 101)
et patria exire iubere aliquem patria carere
interdicere alicui Italiā
alicuem exsilio afficere, multare
in exsilium ire, pergere, proficisci
exsilium ire or abire
solum vertere, mutare (Caecin. 34. 100)
exsulare (Div. 2. 24. 52)
in exsilio esse, exsulem esse
alicuem (in patriam) restituere
in patriam redire
ante actarum (praeteritarum) rerum oblivio
or simply oblivio
omnem memoriām discordiarum oblivione sempiterne delere (Phil. 1. 1. 1)
postliminium (De Or. 1. 40. 181)
to banish a person, send him into exile.
to banish a person, send him into exile.
to banish a person, send him into exile.
to expel a person from the city, country.
to banish a man from his native land.
to be in exile.
to banish a person from Italy.
to punish by banishment.
to go into exile.
to go into exile.
to leave one's country (only used of exiles).
to live in exile.
to live in exile.
to recall from exile.
to return from exile.
amnesty (ἁμνηστία).
to proclaim a general amnesty.
a returning from exile to one's former privileges.

10. Power—Monarchy—Royalty

imperium, rerum summam deferre alicui
rem publicam alicui permittere
to confer supreme power on a person.
to give some one unlimited power in state affairs.

imperium tenere (in aliquem)
imperium obtinere
principatu deici (B. G. 7. 63)
cum imperio esse (cf. XVI. 3)
to have power over some one.
to maintain power, authority.
to be deposed from one's leading position.
to have unlimited power; to be invested with

263 deferre in the sense "confer," "attribute," is also constructed with ad; when it means to bring news, give information it always takes ad.
in imperio esse to hold a high office (such as conferred
imperium, i.e. consulatus, dictatura, praetura).
imperium in annum prorogare to prolong the command for a year.
imperium deponere (Rep. 2. 12. 23) to lay down one's power.
imperium singulare absolute power; autocracy.
dominari in aliquem to have unlimited power over a person.
imperium, regnum, tyrannidem occupare to take upon oneself absolute power.
(1) to usurp supreme power, (2) to be in a
dominatio impotens position of power.
desticta, infinita despotic rule.
regnum, tyrannidem sibi parere aliqua re to establish oneself as despot, tyrant by
potestas immoderata, tyrannidem concupiscere some means.
to aspire to a despotism.
tyrannidem sibi parere aliqua re to establish oneself as despot, tyrant by
potestas immoderata, infinita despotic rule.
occupare to take upon oneself absolute power.
tyrannidem sibi parere aliqua re to establish oneself as despot, tyrant by
potestas immoderata, infinita despotic rule.
occupare to take upon oneself absolute power.
imperium singulare absolute power; autocracy.

11. Slavery—Freedom

servitute premi (Phil. 4. 1. 3) to languish in slavery.
liberum populum servitute afficere to enslave a free people.
aliquem in servitutem redigere to reduce to slavery.
alicui servitutem inungere, imponere to lay the yoke of slavery on some one.
civitatem servitute oppressam tenere (Dom.
to keep the citizens in servile subjection.
51. 131)
liberatam populo eripere to rob a people of its freedom.
populum liberum esse, libertate uti, sui iuris
to grant a people its independence.
esse pati

264 Cf. certamen singulare, a fight of one individual with another, a duel (cf. xvi. 10a). singularis also
has the meaning "unique," "pre-eminent," e.g. singularis virtus.

265 tyrannus, tyrannis, tyrannicus are rarely used in the Greek sense, irresponsible sovereign, etc., but
usually mean despot, despotic, etc. The pure Latin equivalents are rex, dominus, dominatio,
imperium, regius, or if there is emphasis on the cruelty of despots, dominus saevus, crudelis et
superba dominatio, etc.
ad libertatem conclamare
to summon to liberty.

ad arma conclamare (Liv. 3. 50)
to call to arms.

vincula rumpere
to burst one's chains.

iugum servitutis excutere
to shake off the yoke of slavery.

iugum servile a cervicibus deicere (Phil. 1. 2. 6)
to shake off the yoke of slavery.

servitutem exuere (Liv. 34. 7)
to deliver some one from slavery.

ab aliquo servitutem or servitutis iugum depellere
to deliver some one from slavery.

dominationem or dominatum refringere
to destroy a despotism, tyranny.

regios spiritus reprimere (Nep. Dion. 5. 5)
to destroy a despotism, tyranny.

libertatem recuperare
to recover liberty.

to deliver the state from a tyranny.

12. Revenue—Colonies—Provinces

vectigalia redimere, conducere
to farm the revenues.

vectigalia exercere (vid. sect. V. 7, note The first...)
to collect the taxes.

vectigalia exigere (acerbe)
to exact the taxes (with severity).

pecuniam cogere a civitatibus
to extort money from the communities.

vectigalia, tributa pendere
to pay taxes.

immunis (tributorum) (Verr. 5. 21. 51)
exempt from taxation.

immunitatem omnium rerum habere
to enjoy absolute immunity.

vectigalia, tributa alicui imponere
to impose tribute on some one.

tributorum multitudine premi
to be crushed by numerous imposts.

ager publicus
to allot land.

pecunia publica, quae ex metallis redit
the public income from the mines.

avertere pecuniam (Verr. 2. 1. 4)
to embezzle money.

peculatum facere (Rab. Perd. 3. 8)
to embezzle money.

rem publicam quaestui habere
to enrich oneself at the expense of the state.

coloniam deducere in aliquem locum (vid. sect. XII. 1, note Notice too...)
to found a colony somewhere.

colônos mittere (Div. 1. 1. 3)
to send out colonists.

coloniam constituere (Leg. Agr. 1. 5. 16)
to found a colony.

provinciam alicui decernere, mandare
to entrust some one with an official duty, a province.

provincias sortiri (Liv. 38. 35)
to draw lots for the provinces.

alicui Syria (sorte) obvēnit, obigit
the province of Syria has fallen to some one's lot.

(provincias nominare, decernere).

266 vectigalia = indirect taxes, including, for example, decumae, the tenth, tithe of corn; scriptura, the duty on pasturage; portorium, harbour-toll. tributum = direct tax on incomes.

267 provincia originally means a sphere of activity, an employ, especially of magistrates; it then means the administration of a country outside Italy conquered in war, and lastly the country itself, a province. The senate each year determined on the countries to which magistrates were to be sent (provincias nominare, decernere).
in provinciam proficisci (Liv. 38. 35) to set out for one's province.
provincias permutare to exchange provinces.
provinciam administrare, obtinere to manage, govern a province.
provinciam obire to visit, traverse a province.
(de or ex) provincia decedere or simply decedere (vid. sect. II. 4, note Cf. especially...) to leave a province (at the termination of one's term of office).

13. Magistracies

(a) Candidature—Election

petere magistratum, honores to seek office.
ambire 268 aliquem (always with Acc. of person) to solicit the vote or favour of some one.
nomen profiteri or simply profiteri to become a candidate.
manus prensare 269 (De Or. 1. 24. 112) to shake hands with voters in canvassing.
nomina appellat (nomenclator) the agent (nomenclator) mentions the names of constituents to the canvasser.
competitor (Brut. 30. 113) a rival candidate.
multa (pauc a) puncta in centuria (tribu) to obtain many (few) votes in a century or tribe.
alia ferre centuriam, tribum ferre (Planc. 49) to gain the vote of a century or tribe.
omnes centurias ferre or omnium suffragis, cunctis centuris creari to be elected unanimously
repulsam ferre consulatus (a populo) (Tusc. 5. 19. 54) to fail in one's candidature for the consulship.

magistratus vitio creati magistrates elected irregularly (i.e. either when the auspices have been unfavourable or when some formality has been neglected).
sufficere aliquem in alicuius locum or alicui to elect a man to fill the place of another who has died whilst in office.
alicii or in alicuius locum succedere to succeed a person in an office.
suo (legitimo) anno creari (opp. ante annum) to succeed some one as general.
continuare magistratum (Sall. Iug. 37. 2) to be elected at the age required by law (lex Villia annalis).
prorogare alicui imperium (in annum) to continue one's office for another year.
continuare alicui magistratum to prolong some one's office for another year.
prorogare alicui imperium (in annum) to prolong a person's command.

268 Hence ambitio, legitimate canvassing; ambitus, illegal canvassing.
269 Under the head ambitionis occupatio (De Or. 1. 1. 1) are enumerated salutare, rogare, supplicare, manus prensare, invitare ad prandium, and sometimes convivia tributim data. For the whole subject vid. Q. Cicero's book de petitione consulatus ad M. fratrem.
270 In counting the votes polled, a dot or mark was put opposite a candidate's name as often as a tablet (tabella) with his name on it came up. Hence punctum ferre, to be successful, e.g. Hor. A. P. 343 omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.
magistratus et imperia (Sall. Iug. 3. 1)  
inire magistratum  
munus administrare, gerere  
munere fungi, muneri praeesse  
honores alicui mandare, deferre  
muneri alicuem praeficere, praepone re  
munus explere, sustinere  
abdicare se magistratu (Div. 2. 35)

deponere  
abire magistratu  
de potestate decedere

res ad interregnum venit or adducitur  
abrogare alicui munus (Verr. 2. 57)  
abrogare alicui imperium

viri clari et honorati (De Sen. 7. 22)  
honoribus ac reipublicae muneribus  
perfundus (De Or. 1. 45)

amplis honoribus usus (Sall. Iug. 25. 4)

(b) Particular Magistracies

consulem creare  
alicuem consulem declarare (Leg. Agr. 2. 2. 4)  
alicuem consulem renuntiare (De Or. 2. 64. 260)

bis consul

iterum, tertium consul  
sextum (Pis. 9. 20), septimum consul  
videant or dent operam consules, ne quid  
res publica detrimenti capiat (Catil. 1. 2. 4)

in hoc praeclaro consulatu  
aetas consularis  
pro consule in Ciliciam proficisci  
supriore consulatu  
dictatorem dicere (creare)  
dictaturam gerere  
dictator dicit (legit) magistrum equitum

during this brilliant consulship.  
the consular age (43 years).  
to go to Cilicia as pro-consul.  
in his former consulship.  
to name a person dictator.  
to be dictator.  
a dictator appoints a *magister equitum*.

---

271 But *deponere* is also found in the sense of *abdicare*, e.g. B. G. 7. 33. 4; N. D. 2. 11; Liv. 2. 28. 9.

272 *Creare* is used of any magistrate regularly elected. The *locus classicus* on this subject is Cic. De Leg. 3. 3. 6-12.

273 This formula conferred absolute power on the consuls. This was done only in cases of great emergency, and was somewhat similar to our "declaration of martial law."
potestatem habet in aliquem vitae necisque
(B. G. 1. 16. 5)
he has power over life and death.

lictores summovent turbam (Liv. 4. 50)
the lictors clear the way.

fasces praeferre, summittere
to walk before with the fasces; to lower the fasces.

censores censent populum
censuram agere, gerere
to hold the census.

censuram agere, gerere
to perform the censors' duties.

censum habere, agere (Liv. 3. 22)
to receive tenders for the construction of temples, highroads.

locare aedes, vias faciendas (Phil. 9. 7. 16)
to let out public works to contract.

locare opera publica
redimere, conducere porticum aedificandam
(Liv. 2. 21. 47)
to undertake a contract for building a portico.

nota, animadversio censoria
notare aliquem ignominia (Cluent. 43. 119)
to brand a person with infamy.

censu prohibere, excludere
to strike off the burgess-roll.

tribu movere aliquem
to expel some one from his tribe.

e senatu eicere
to expel from the senate.

locare aedem, vias faciendas (Phil. 9. 7. 16)
to receive tenders for the construction of temples, highroads.

lustrum condere (Liv. 1. 44. 2)
to complete the censorship (by certain formal purificatory ceremonies = lustro faciendo).

tribuni plebis sacrosancti (Liv. 3. 19. 10)
the plebeian tribunes, whose persons are inviolable.

appellare 274 tribunos plebis (in aliqua re a praetore) (Liv. 2. 55)
to appeal to the plebeian tribunes against a praetor's decision.

provocare 275 ad populum (Liv. 2. 55)
to appeal to the people.

intercessio tribunicia (cf. sect. XIV. 5)
the tribunicial veto.

14. The Senate

publicum consilium (Phil. 7.7. 19)
the council of the nation; the senate.
in senatum legere, 276 eligere
to elect to the senate.

senatum vocare, convocare
to call a meeting of the senate.

senatum cogere (Liv. 3. 39)
to assemble the senate.

edicere, 277 ut senatus frequens adsit (Fam. 11. 6. 2)
to issue a proclamation calling on the senators to assemble in full force.

senatum habere
to hold a sitting of the senate.

ad senatum referre 278 (Cic. Dom. 53. 136)
to bring a question before the senate (of the presiding magistrate).

---

274 appellare as a legal technical term only occurs in classical Latin in the formula te, vos appello.
275 provocare only with proper names, e.g. ad Catonem provocare. To appeal to some one's pity, etc. = implorare alicuius misericordiam, fidem, etc.
276 Distinct from senatum legere = to read over and revise the list of senators (used of the censors). The head of the list was called princeps senatus.
277 edicere, edictum, technical terms; edicere is used of the praetor deciding how a case is to be tried, cf. Verr. 2. 1. 41; Flacc. 28. 67. Then more generally of an order, declaration, proclamation. The senate was convened by the praeco or by means of a notice posted in some public place (edictum).
278 A meeting of the senate opened by a declaration of the agenda by the presiding magistrate, a consul, praetor, or tribune. This was called referre ad senatum.
patres (senatum) consulere de aliqua re (Sall. Iug. 28)

to consult the senators on a matter.

sententiam rogare, interrogare

to ask the opinion of...

sententiam dicere

to give an opinion (also used of a judge, cf. sect. VI. 4).

senatus sententia inclinat ad... (De Sen. 6, 16)

the senate inclines to the opinion, decides for...

sententia vincit (Liv. 2. 4. 3)

the majority were of the opinion...

maior pars

the majority.

quid censes? quid tibi videtur?

what is your opinion?

quid de ea re fieri placet?

what is your opinion?

discissionem facere (Sest. 34. 74)

to take the vote (by division).

discedere (pedibus), ire in alcuuis sententiam (Liv. 23. 10)

to vote for some one's motion.

senatus decrevit (populusque iussit) ut

the senate decreed (and the people ratified the decree) that...

senatus consultum fit (Att. 2. 24. 3)

a resolution of the senate (not opposed by a tribunical veto) was made.

senatus auctoritas

the opinion of the senate in general.

senatum alicui dare (Q. Fr. 2. 11. 2)

to give a man audience before the senate.

a senatu res ad populum reicitur

a matter is referred (for decision) from the senate to the people.

dicendi mora diem extrahere, eximere, tollere

to pass the whole day in discussion.

dimittere senatum

to dismiss the senate.

nox senatum dirimit

night breaks up the sitting.

XV. Law and Justice

1. Law in General

ius dicere

to administer justice (said of the praetor).

ius reddere (Liv. 3. 33)
to administer justice (said of the praetor).

ius suum persequi

to assert one's right.

ius suum adipsici (Liv. 1. 32. 10)
to obtain justice.

ius suum tenere, obtinere

to maintain one's right.

de iure suo decedere or cedere (ex) iure, lege agere cum aliquo

to waive one's right.

summo iure agere cum aliquo (cf. summum ius, summa iniuria)
to proceed against some one with the utmost rigour of the law; to strain the law in one's favour.

in ius, in iudicium vocare aliquem

to summon some one before the court.

After the rogatio sententiarum came the voting, usually by division (per discessionem, pedibus ire in sententiam), but in cases of doubt each member was asked his opinion (per singulorum sententias exquisitas). The presiding officer then dismissed the meeting with the words nihil vos moramur, patres conscripti, "I need not detain you any longer." From this formula probably came the colloquial uses—(1) "I do not care for...," "I have no interest in..." (with the Acc.); (2) "I have nothing against...," "you have my consent to..." (with the Acc. and Inf. or quominus).

id.
diem dicere alicui

in iudicium venire, in iudicio adesse
iudicia administrare

iudicium exercere (vid. sect. V. 7, note The first.)
iudicio praeesse
conventus agere (B. G. 1. 54)

quaestiones perpetuae (Brut. 27. 106)
alicuem in integrum (vid. sect. V. 4, note The proper... )
(1) respondere 281 (de iure or ius)
(2) cavere (in iure) (Off. 2. 65)
(3) agere

aequum iudicem se alicui praebere
ex aequo et bono (Caecin. 23. 65)
iudex incorruptus
ratio iudiciorum
aequa iuris descriptio (Off. 2. 4. 15)
eaquo iure vivere cum aliquo
iustitium indicere, edicere (Phil. 5. 12)

iustitium remittere
ius ad artem redigere
ius nullum
ius ac fas omne delere
omnia iura pervertere
contra ius fasque
optimo iure
ius praecipuum, beneficium, donum, also
immunitas 282 C. Gen.

2. Inquiry—Testimony—Torture

aliquid, causam cognoscere
quaerere aliquid or de aliqua re
quaestionem habere de aliqua, de aliqua re or in aliquem
quaestioni praeesse
quaesitor
incognita causa (cf. sect. XV. 3, indicta

to summon some one to appear on a given day; to accuse a person.
to appear in court.
to have charge of the administration of justice.
to administer justice; to judge (used of criminal cases before the praetor).
to be president of a court.
to convene the assizises (used of a provincial governor).
the standing commissions of inquiry.
to reinstate a person in his right.
to give a legal opinion, decision on points of law.
to point out what precautions, what formal steps must be taken to insure immunity.
to be energetic in the conduct of the case; to plead before the judge.
to judge some one equitably.
justly and equitably.
an impartial judge.
judicial organisation.
a sound judicial system.
to live with some one on an equal footing.
to proclaim that the courts are closed, a cessation of legal business.
to re-open the courts.
to reduce law to a system.
absence of justice.
to trample all law under foot.
to trample all law under foot.
against all law, human and divine.
with full right.
prerogative, privilege.

281 In full consulenti respondere. From this consultation lawyers got the title iuris or iure consulti. In these three points, respondere, cavere, agere, consisted the practical duty of a jurist. Cicero, however (De Or. 1. 48), adds scribere = to draw up legal instruments such as wills, contracts, etc.

282 privilegium in this sense is post-classical. In classical prose it denotes a law passed for or against an individual (privus), e.g. privilegium ferre, irrogare de aliquo (Cic.)
causa
in tabulas publicas referre aliquid
deprehendere aliquem (in aliqua re)
deprehendere aliquem in manifesto scelere
testis gravis
testis locuples
testis incorruptus atque integer
aliquem testem alicuius rei (in aliquid) citare
testis gravis an important witness.
testis locuples a witness worthy of all credit.
testis incorruptus atque integer an impartial witness.
aliquem testem adhibere
testem produere (in aliquem)
testimonium dicere pro aliquo
pro testimonio dicere
testibus teneri, convictum esse
testibus tenere, convictum esse
testibus tenere, convictum esse
quaeque tormenta
quaeque tormenta
quaeque tormenta
quaeque tormenta
cruciatūs tormentorum
cruciatūs tormentorum
aliquem a ceteris separare et in arcam
concere ne quis cum eo colloqui possit (Mil. 22. 60)

3. Process—Defence

to enter a thing in the public records.
to catch a person, find him out.
to take a person in the act.
an important witness.
a witness worthy of all credit.
an impartial witness.
to cite a person to give evidence on a matter.
to use some one's evidence.
to use some one's evidence.
to produce as a witness.
to produce as a witness.
to appear as witness against a person.
to give evidence on some one's behalf.
to state as evidence.
to be convicted by some one's evidence.
to have a person tortured.
to have a person tortured.
to examine slaves by torture.
the pains of torture.
to isolate a witness.
a civil case.
a criminal case.
to conduct a person's case (said of an agent, solicitor).
to address the court (of the advocate).
to defend oneself before the judge (of the accused).
to defend a person.
to conduct some one's defence in a case.
to have a good case.
to gain a weak case by clever pleading.
counsel; advocate.
to undertake a case.
to undertake a case.
without going to law.
to go to law with, sue a person.
the case is still undecided.
to arrange a dispute (by arbitration).
to win a case.

283 They were not called advocati till under the Empire. In Augustan Latin advocatus = amicus qui adest alicui (in iudicio), i.e. a man who supported his friend by his presence and influence.
causā or iudicio vincere to win a case.
causam or litem amittere, perdere to lose one's case.
causā or litem cadere (owing to some informality) to lose one's case.
calumniae litium (Mil. 27. 74) chicanery (specially of wrongfully accusing an innocent man).

4. Accusation—Verdict—Decision

accusatio (Cael. 3. 6) a criminal accusation.
actio, petitio a private, civil prosecution.
nomen alicuius deferre (apud praetorem) to accuse, denounce a person.
refferre in reos aliquem to put some one on the list of the accused.
eximere de reis aliquem to strike a person's name off the list of the accused.
aliquis reus fit (Fam. 13. 54) some one is accused.
iudices reicere (Verr. 3. 11. 28) to challenge, reject jurymen.

caput alicuius agitur (vid. sect. V. 8) a person's life is in jeopardy.
accusare aliquem rei capitalis (rerum capitalium) to charge some one with a capital offence.

accusare aliquem peculatus, pecuniae publicae to accuse some one of malversation, embezzlement of public money.
accusare aliquem falsarum tabularum 284 to accuse a person of forging the archives.
postulare aliquem repetundarum 285 or de repetundis to accuse a person of extortion (to recover the sums extorted).

accusare aliquem perduellionis to charge a person with treason (hostile conduct against the state generally).
accusare aliquem maiestatis to accuse a person of high treason (more specific than the preceding).

accusare aliquem ambitus, de ambitu to accuse some one of illegal canvassing.
accusare aliquem de vi, de veneficiis to accuse a person of violence, poisoning.

res judicatas rescindere (Cic. Sull. 22. 63) to rescind a decision.
lege Plautia damnari (Sall. Cat. 31. 4) to be condemned under the Lex Plautia.

5. Guilt

in culpa esse to be at fault; to blame; culpable.

284 Cf. tabulas publicas corrumpere (Rosc. Am. 128); commutare, to falsify public records.
285 Extortion generally can be rendered by violenta exactio pecuniarum, or some verbal periphrasis (e.g. per vim capere pecunias, etc.)
culpa alicuius rei est in aliquo
some one is to blame in a matter; it is some one's fault.
mea culpa est
it is my fault.
culpa carere, vacare
to be free from blame.
extra culpam esse
to be free from blame.
abesse a culpa
prope abesse a culpa
to be almost culpable.
affinem esse culpae
to be almost culpable.
culpam in aliquem conferre, transferre, conicere
to put the blame on another.
culpam alicui attribuere, assignare
aliquid alicui crimini dare, vitio vertere (Verr. 5. 50)
to attribute the fault to some one.
culpam committere, contrahere
to commit some blameworthy action.
facinus, culpam in se admittere
to commit some blameworthy action.
non committere, ut...
to take care not to...
culpam alicuius rei sustinere
to bear the blame of a thing.
culpam a se amovere
veniam dare alicui
to exonerate oneself from blame.
to pardon a person.

6. Punishment—Acquittal

poena afficere aliquem (Off. 2. 5. 18)
to punish some one.
animadvertere in aliquem
to punish some one.
punire aliquem
to punish some one.
uilciscia aliquem (pro aliqua re)
to exact a penalty from some one.
poenas alicuius persequi
to exact a penalty from some one.
poenam petere, repetere ab aliquo
to exact a penalty from some one.
poenas expetere ab aliquo
to exact a penalty from some one.
supplicium sumere de aliquo
to ordain as punishment that...
hanc poenam constituere in aliquem, ut...
to deal severely with a person.
graviter consuler in aliquem (Liv. 8. 13)
to be (heavily) punished by some one.
poenas (graves) dare alicui
to be punished by some one (on account of a thing).
poenas alicui pendere (alicuius rei)
to suffer punishment.

poenas dependere, expendere, solvere, persolvere
to suffer punishment.
poenam (alicuius rei) ferre, perferre
to be punished for a thing, expiate it.
poenam luere (alicuius rei) (Sull. 27. 76)
to atone for something by...
luere (Sull. 27. 76)
to submit to a punishment.
poenas subire
to condemn some one to a fine.
pecunia multare aliquem
to impose a fine (used of the prosecutor or the tribunus plebis proposing a fine to be ratified by the people).
multam irrogare alicui (Cic. Dom. 17. 45)
to be fined 10,000 asses.
decem milibus aeris damnari
to put some one in irons, chains.
in vincula (custodiam) dare alicui

Note purgare aliquid, to justify oneself in a matter; se alicui purgare de aliqua re (Fam. 12. 25); alicui purgatum esse (B. G. 1. 28).
To express the passive use expiare, e.g. scelus supplicio expiatum.
in vincula, in catenas conicere aliquem
to put some one in irons, chains.
in carcerem conicere aliquem
to throw some one into prison.
capitis or capite damnare aliquem
to condemn some one to death.
capitis absolvere aliquem
to repeal a death-sentence passed on a person.
supplicium alicui decernere, in aliquem
constituere
to decree the penalty of death.
Solo capite sanxit, si quis... (Att. 10. 1)
Solon made it a capital offence to...
morte multare aliquem (Catil. 1. 11. 28)
to punish any one with death.
supplicium sumere de aliquo
to execute the death-sentence on a person.
supplicio (capitis) affici
to suffer capital punishment.
ad palum deligare (Liv. 2. 5)
to bind to the stake.
virgis caedere
to beat with rods.
securi percere, ferre aliquem
to execute a person, cut off his head.
in crucem agere, tollere aliquem
to crucify.
cruci suffigere aliquem
to crucify.
impute fecisse, tulisse aliquid
to go unpunished.
impunitum aliquem dimittere
to let a person go scot-free.
mortem deprecari (B. G. 7. 40. 6)
to beg for life.

XVI. War

1. Levies—Military Oath—Armies in General

aetas militaris
military age.
qui arma ferre possunt or iuventus
men of military age.
qui per aetatem arma ferre non possunt or
men exempt from service owing to age.
aetate ad bellum inutiles
to raise an army.
exercitum conficere (Imp. Pomp. 21. 61)
to levy troops.
milites (exercitum) scribere, conscribere
to hold a levy.
dilectum habere
to compel communities to provide troops.
ad nomen non respondere (Liv. 7. 4)
to enlist oneself.
imperare milities civitatibus
imperator to fail to answer one's name.
nomen (nomina) dare, profiteri
imperare milites civitatibus
imperator to try to avoid military service.
ad nomen non respondere (Liv. 7. 4)
to plead ill-health as an excuse for absence.
improviso (sing.) capessere
militiam detrectare, subterfugere
to be excused military duty.
militiae vacationem habere
to serve in the cavalry, infantry.
equo, pedibus merere (Liv. 27. 11)
to take the military oath.
sacramentum (o) dicere (vid. sect. XI. 2,
to make soldiers take the military oath.
note sacramentum...)
milites sacramento rogare, adigere
to call up troops from all sides.
evocare undique copias
the volunteers.
evocati, voluntarii (B. G. 5. 56)
to issue a general call to arms.
omnes ad arma convocare
to form two legions.
efficere duas legiones
to fill up the numbers of the legions.
complere legiones (B. C. 1. 25)

288 One can also say vitam, salutem deprecari, as deprecari means (1) to obtain by supplication, (2) to avert by supplication.
supplementum cogere, scribere, legere
auxilia 289 arcessere
copias (arma) cum aliquo iungere or se cum aliquo iungere
conducere, contrahere copias
cogere omnes copias in unum locum
parare exercitum, copias
alere exercitum (Off. 1. 8. 25)
recensere, lustrare, recognoscere exercitum
(Liv. 42. 31)
dimittere exercitum
commeatum militibus dare (opp. petere)

magnae copiae (not multae)
exiguae copiae (Fam. 3. 3. 2)
ingens, maximus exercitus (not numerosus)
robora peditum
milites levis armaturae
vetus miles, veteranus miles
qui magnum in castris usum habent
expeditus (opp. impeditus) miles
exercitatus in armis
milites tumultuarii 290 (opp. exercitus iustus)
(Liv. 35. 2)
tirones

2. Pay—Service—Commissariat

stipendium 291 dare, numerare, persolvere militibus
stipendia facere, merere
emeritis stipendis (Sall. Iug. 84. 2)
militia func tum, perfunctum esse
rude donatum esse 292 (Phil. 2. 29)
milles mercenarii or exercitus conducticus
rem frumentarium comparare, providere
rei frumentariae prosicere (B. G. 1. 23)
frumentum providere exercitu
frumenti vim maximam comparare
intercludere commeatum

to levy recruits to fill up the strength.
to summon auxiliary troops.
to join forces with some one.
to levy recruits to fill up the strength.
to join forces with some one.
to join forces with some one.
to join forces with some one.
to join forces with some one.
to concentrate troops.
to concentrate all the troops at one point.
to equip an army, troops.
to support an army.
to review an army.
to disband an army.
to give furlough, leave of absence to soldiers.
a large force, many troops.
a small force.
a numerous army.
the flower of the infantry.
light infantry.
veterans; experienced troops.
veterans; experienced troops.
a soldier lightly armed, ready for battle.
practised in arms.
soldiers collected in haste; irregulars.
recruits.

289 auxilia = auxiliary troops raised in the provinces, usually light cavalry. In Caesar's army the cavalry consisted of Gaulish, Spanish, and German auxiliaries. A thousand of these were attached to each legion and were usually commanded by a Roman officer.

290 tumultus is used of a sudden rising, rebellion, to repress which all able-bodied men were called to arms. Such risings were particularly common in Gaul, but cf. tumultus servilis (B. G. 1. 10)—; tumultus Istricus (Liv. 41. 6. 1).

291 stipendium first established in 406 B.C.; it was paid at the end of the campaign, hence stipendia often = campaigns, years of service.

292 Used originally of gladiators, who on their retirement received a staff or wooden sword (rudis), hence they were called rudianii. Cf. Ov. Tr. 4. 8. 24 me quoque donari iam rude tempus erat.
intercludere, prohibere hostes commeatu to cut off all supplies of the enemy.

3. Command—Discipline

praeficere aliquem exercitui to place some one at the head of an army, give him the command.
praeficere aliquem bello gerendo to charge some one with the conduct of a war.
praeesse exercitui to be at the head of an army.
magnum usum in re militari habere (Sest. 5. 12) to possess great experience in military matters.
rei militaris rudem esse to have had no experience in war.

vir fortissimus a hero.
magnas res gerere a success; a glorious feat of arms.
res fortiter feliciterque gesta exploits in war; brilliant actions.
res bene gesta a success; a glorious feat of arms.
res gestae 293 the command-in-chief.
summa belli, imperii (B. G. 2. 4. 7) to hold a high command.
cum imperio esse to be commander-in-chief.
imperi summan tenere (Rep. 2. 28) to appoint some one commander-in-chief.
imperi summae praeesse a success; a glorious feat of arms.
imperii summan deferre alicui or ad alicuem, tradere alicui the command is transferred, passes to some one.
imperium transfertur ad alicuem (not transit) to depose a person from his command.
imperium alicui abrogare (Off.3. 10) discipline (insubordination).
modestia 294 (opp. immodestia) to obey a person's orders.
dicto audientem esse alicui to keep good discipline amongst one's men.
milites disciplina coercere to keep good discipline amongst one's men.
milites coercere et in officio continere (B. C. 1. 67. 4) to keep good discipline amongst one's men.

4. Weapons

arma capere, sumere to take up one's arms.
arma expedire (Tusc. 2. 16. 37) to make ready for battle.
galeam induere to put on one's helmet.
armis (castris) exuere alicuem to disarm a person.
arma ponere (not deponere) to pile arms (cf. sect. XII. 3, note vestem deponere...).
ab armis discedere (Phil. 11. 33) to lay down arms.
in armis esse to be under arms.
cum telo esse to be armed.
extorquere arma e manibus to wrest weapons from some one's hands.

293 Thus magnae, memorabiles, praestantissimae res gestae, and also meae, tuae, suae, etc. The phrase rem gerere can be used either of the combat (proelium) or the whole war (bellum), cf. B. G. 5. 44. 11; Off. 3. 108.
294 modestia, the character of the man who observes a mean (qui servat modum), is used morally of self-restraint, moderation (σωφροσύνη). In politics it means loyalty; in the army, discipline.
res ad arma venit
matters have reached the fighting-stage.
tela iacere, conicere, mittere
to discharge missiles.
extra teli iactum, coniectum esse
to be out of range.
ad teli coniectum venire (Liv. 2. 31)
to come within Javelin-range.
se obicere telis
to expose oneself to missiles.
eminus hastis, comminus gladiis uti
to use javelins at a distance, swords at close quarters.
gladium educere (e vagina)
to draw one's sword (from the scabbard).
gladium in vaginam recondere
to sheath one's sword.
gladium stringere, destringere
to draw one's sword.
gladium alicui in pectus infigere
to plunge one's sword in some one's breast.
gladio aliquem per pectus transfigere (Liv. 2. 46)
to transfix, pierce a man's breast with one's sword.
sicam, cultrum in corde alicuius defigere (Liv. 1. 58)
to plunge a dagger, knife in some one's heart.
decurrere (in armis)
to manoeuvre.
vi et armis
by force of arms.

5. War

bellum parare
to make preparations for war.
apparatus (rare in plur.) belli
preparations for war; war-material.
bellum indicere, denuntiare
to make formal declaration of war.
res repetere (ab aliquo) (Off. 1. 11. 36)
to demand satisfaction, restitution.
res reddere (alicui) (cf. sect. V. 11)
to make restitution.
bellum iustum (pium)
a regular, formal war.
bellum intestinum, domesticum (opp. bellum externum)
a civil war.
bellum facere, movere, excitare
to cause a war.
bellum confiare (Fam. 5. 2. 8)
to kindle a war.
bellum moliri
to meditate war.
bellum incipere, belli initium facere (B. G. 7. 1. 5)
to commence hostilities.
bello se interponere (Liv. 35. 48)
to interfere in a war.
bello implicari
to be involved in a war.
bellum cum aliquo inire
to begin a war with some one.
bellum impendet, imminet, instat
a war is imminent.
bellum ortur, exardescit
war breaks out.
omnia bello flagrant or ardent (Fam. 4. 1. 2)
everywhere the torch of war is flaming.
bellum gerere cum aliquo
to make war on a person.
bellum coniungere (Imp. Pomp. 9. 26)
to wage war in conjunction with some one.
bellum ducere, trahere, extrahere
to protract, prolong a war.
omni studio in (ad) bellum incumbere
to carry on a war energetically.
bellum inferre alicui (Att. 9. 1. 3)
to invade.
bellum or arma ulter inferre
to be the aggressor in a war; to act on the offensive.
bellum (inlatum) defendere
to act on the defensive.
proficisci ad bellum, in expeditionem (Sall.)
to go to war, commence a campaign.

295 defigere is also used metaphorically, e.g. defigere omnes curas, cogitaciones in rei publicae salute (Phil. 14. 5. 13).
Iug. 103)
mittere ad bellum
bellum administrare
bello persequi aliquem, laccere
belli finem facere, bellum finire
bellum conficere, perficere

bellum componere (Fam. 10. 33)
bellum transferre alio, in...
belli sedes (Liv. 4. 31)
rationem belli gerendi mutare (Liv. 32. 31)

6. The Army on the March

agmen medium (Liv. 10. 41)
agmen primum
agmen novissimum (extremum)
agmen claudere, cogere
signa ferre, tollere
castra movere
agmen agere
procedere cum exercitu
magnis itineribus (Sall. Iug. 37)
quam maximis itineribus (potest)
citatum agmen rapere
raptim agmen ducere
citato gradu incedere (cf. sect. II. 5)
loca, regiones, loci naturam explorare
iter facere
iter conficere (B. C. 1. 70)
iter maturare, accelerare
iter continuaere (B. C. 3. 11)
iter non intermittere
iter flectere, convertere, avertere
signa convertere (B. G. 1. 25)
averso itinere contendere in...
iter tentare per vim (cf. sect. II. 3)
agmen, exercitum demittere in...
exercitum admove re, adducere ad...
signa sequi (opp. a signis discedere, signa relinquere)

ordines servare (B. G. 4. 26)
confertis, solutis ordinibus
raris ordinibus
ordines turbare, perrumpere

---

signa = standards of a maniple, cohort, or legion. Since Marius' time the signum of a legion was an eagle, those of the maniples different animals, wolf, horse, etc. In the camp the standards were fixed in the ground, in action they were carried in the front rank, hence several phrases—signa convellere, tollere, efferre, to break up camp; signa proferre, promovere, to advance in battle-order; signa inferre, to attack; signa conferre, to come to close quarters; signa statuere, to halt; signa convertere, to change one's route; signa referre, to retire; signa relinquere, to desert, etc.
agmine quadrato incedere, ire  

to march with closed ranks, in order of battle.

agmine duplici, tripli
donovissimos premere
donovissimos turbare

in two, three columns.
to press the rearguard.
to throw the rearguard into confusion.
to harass the rear.
to protect the troops in the rear.
to surprise and defeat the enemy.

agmine duplici, triplici

to press the rearguard.
to throw the rearguard into confusion.
to harass the rear.
to protect the troops in the rear.
to surprise and defeat the enemy.

subsistere, consistere

to halt.
to halt.
to occupy a position (with troops).
to occupy the high ground.
to occupy a place beforehand.
to hold a mountain.
to take up one's position on a mountain.
to occupy the foot of a hill.
to garrison a town.
to garrison a town.
to station posts, pickets, at intervals.
to place a close line of sentry-posts.

capere, occupare locum

to occupy a position (with troops).
to occupy the high ground.
to occupy a place beforehand.
to hold a mountain.
to take up one's position on a mountain.
to occupy the foot of a hill.
to garrison a town.
to garrison a town.
to station posts, pickets, at intervals.
to place a close line of sentry-posts.

occupare loca superiora

to occupy a position (with troops).
to occupy the high ground.
to occupy a place beforehand.
to hold a mountain.
to take up one's position on a mountain.
to occupy the foot of a hill.
to garrison a town.
to garrison a town.
to station posts, pickets, at intervals.
to place a close line of sentry-posts.

praedere montem (B. G. 1. 22)
to occupy a position (with troops).
to occupy the high ground.
to occupy a place beforehand.
to hold a mountain.
to take up one's position on a mountain.
to occupy the foot of a hill.
to garrison a town.
to garrison a town.
to station posts, pickets, at intervals.
to place a close line of sentry-posts.

praesidia, custodias disponere

to station posts, pickets, at intervals.
to place a close line of sentry-posts.

vigilias crebras ponere (Sall. Iug. 45. 2)
to station posts, pickets, at intervals.
to place a close line of sentry-posts.

7. The Camp

ciastra stativa (Sall. Iug. 45. 2)
a permanent camp.
winter-quarters, summer-quarters.
to encamp.
in a favourable position.
to mark out a camp.
to take the troops to their winter-quarters.

ciastra hiberna, aestiva
to make a fortified, entrenched camp.
to fortify the camp with a rampart.
to make a ditch, a fosse.
to raise a rampart, earthwork.
to strengthen the camp by outposts.
to leave troops to guard the camp.
to make a camp in common.
to leave the camp undefended.
the cohort on guard-duty.
to mount guard in the camp.
to keep watch on the rampart.
to be on duty before the gates.
to make the round of the sentries.
to give the watchword, countersign.
to keep the troops in camp.
to remain inactive in camp.
to make an inroad into hostile territory.
to go in search of plunder, booty.
ferre atque agere praedam
capere equos
lignatum, aquatum ire
pabulatum, frumentatum ire
pabulatione premi (B. C. 1. 78)
omnia ferro ignique, ferro atque igni or ferro flammacue vastare
classicum or tuba canit ad praetorium
vasa conicalare (B. C. 3. 37)
vasa colligere (Liv. 21. 47)
signa convellere (vid. sect. XVI. 6, note signa...)
consilium habere, convocare
rem ad consilium deferre
to carry off booty.
to capture horses.
to go to horses, water.
to forage.
to suffer from want of forage.
to ravage with fire and sword.
the bugle, trumpet sounds before the general's tent.
to give the signal for breaking up the camp, collecting baggage.
to pack the baggage (for marching).
to pluck up the standards out of the ground (to begin the march).
to hold a council of war.
to refer a matter to a council of war.

8. A Siege

oppidum natura loci munitum (B. G. 1. 38)
oppidum manu (opere) munitum
oppidum obsidere
oppidum obsidione claudere
oppidum in obsidione tenere
oppidum fame domare
oppidum oppugnare
oppidum cingere vallo et fossa

a town with a strong natural position.
a town artificially fortified.
to besiege a city.
to besiege a city.
to keep a town in a state of siege.
to starve a town into surrender.
to storm a town.
to surround a town with a rampart and fosse.
to raise siege-works.
to advance pent-houses, mantlets.
to raise towers.
to advance to the walls protected by a covering of shields.
to apply scaling-ladders.
to scale the walls by means of ladders.
the battering-ram strikes the wall.
a breach.
a breach.
to make mines, subterraneous passages.
to rain missiles on a town, bombard it.
to discharge showers of missiles.
to drive the defenders from the walls.
to make a sally, sortie from the town.
to make a sally, sortie from the town.
to set fire to the siege-works.
to send relief to some one.
to break through the lines (and relieve a town).

297 ferre of things inanimate, agere of cattle. Cf. φέρειν καὶ ἁγεῖν.
 urbis obsidionem liberare
to raise a siege (used of the army of relief).
oppidum obsidione liberare
to raise a siege (used of the army of relief).
obsidionem quattuor menses sustinere
to hold out for four months.
oppugnationem, obsidionem relinquere
to give up an assault, a siege.
portas obstruere (B. G. 5. 50)
to barricade the gates.
portas refringere
to break down the gates.
claustra portarum revellere
to break down the gates.
in oppidum irruptionem
to break into the town.
portas obstruere (B. G. 5. 50)
to break into the town.
portas refringere
to take, storm a town.
claustra revellere
to retake a town.
in oppidum irruptionem
to fire a town.
portas refringere
to plunder a town.
oppidum etere, excidere
to completely destroy a town.
oppidum solo aequare
to raze a town to the ground.
deditione facta (Sall. Iug. 26)
after capitulation.
arma tradere
to surrender weapons.
salutem petere a victore
to beg for mercy from the conqueror.
se suaque omnia dedere victori
to give up one's person and all one's possessions to the conqueror.
se suaque omnia permittere victoris potestati
to give up one's person and all one's possessions to the conqueror.
se permittere in fidem atque in potestatem alicuius (B. G. 2. 3)
to surrender oneself to the discretion of some one.
in fidem recipere alicuem (Fam. 13. 16)
to deal mercifully with some one.
libera corpora sub corona (hasta) veneunt (B. G. 3. 16. 4)
the free men are sold as slaves.
cum uxoribus et liberis (incolumem) conservare
with wife and child.

9. Before the Fight

potestatem, copiam pugnandij hostibus facere
to offer battle to the enemy.
potestatem sui facere (alicui) (cf. sect. XII. 9, note audientia...)
to accept battle.
proelio (ad pugnam) hostes laccersere, provocare
to provoke the enemy to battle.
pugnam detrectare (Liv. 3. 60)
to decline battle.
supersedere proelio
to refrain from fighting.
hostem e manibus non dimittere
to not let the enemy escape.
locum ad pugnam idoneum deligere
to choose suitable ground for an engagement.
diem pugnae constituere (B. G. 3. 24)
to fix a day for the engagement.
signum proelii (committendi) exposcere (B. G. 7. 19)
to demand loudly the signal to engage.
signum proelii dare
to give the signal to engage.
vexillum proponere (Liv. 22. 3)
to fix the ensign on the general's tent (as a signal to commence the engagement).
ad arma concurrere
to rush to arms.
exercitum educere or producere in aciem
to lead the army to the fight.
ad vim et arma descendere (vid. sect. V. 9,
Similarly...

**in certamen descendere**
- to engage in the fight.

**in aciem descendere (Liv. 8. 8)**
- to enter the field of battle.

**aciem (copias, exercitum) instruere or in acie constituere**
- to draw up forces in battle-order.

**aciem triplicem instruere (B. G. 1. 24)**
- to draw up the army in three lines.

**aciem explicare or dilatare**
- to extend the line of battle, deploy the battalions.

**media acies**
- the centre.

**subsidia collocare**
- to station reserve troops.

**equites ad latera disponere (B. G. 6. 8)**
- to place the cavalry on the wings.

**contionari apud milites (B. C. 1. 7)**
- to harangue the soldiers.

**contionem habere apud milites**
- to harangue the soldiers.

**ad virtutem excitare, cohortari** (or simply adhortari, cohortari)
- to incite to valour.

**animos militum confirmare (B. G. 5. 49)**
- to encourage, embolden the soldiery.

---

## 10. The Fight

(a) The Fight in General

**proelium committere**
- to begin the battle, (2) to give battle.

**proelium inire (Liv. 2. 14)**
- to engage.

**proelium facere**
- to give battle.

**proelio equestri contendere**
- to give battle with a cavalry-division.

**proelium equestre facere**
- to give battle with a cavalry-division.

**proelium facere secundum**
- to fight successfully.

**proelium secundis uti**
- to fight successfully.

**rem (bene, male) gerere (vid. sect. XII. 2, note rem gerere...)**
- to win, lose a fight (of the commander).

**proelium intermittere**
- to interrupt the battle.

**proelium dirimere (B. C. 1. 40)**
- to break off the fight.

**proelium restituere**
- to renew the battle with success.

**proelium renovare, redintegrare**
- to begin the fight again.

**proelium deserere**
- to give up the fight.

**proelio, armis decertare (B. G. 1. 50)**
- to fight a decisive battle.

**acie (armis, ferro) decernere**
- to fight a pitched battle.

**in acie dimicare**
- to fight on horseback.

**proelio interesse**
- single combat.

**ex equo pugnare**
- to challenge some one to single combat.

**certamen singulare**
- a bloody battle.

**povocare aliquem ad certamen singulare**
- a pitched battle.

**proelium cruentum, atrox**
- the trumpet sounds for the attack.

**proelium iustum (opp. tumultuarium)**
- to march on the enemy.

(b) The Attack

**classicum canit (B. C. 3. 82)**
- to attack the enemy.

**gradum inferre in hostem**
- to attack the enemy.

**aggredi hostem**
invadere, impetum to attack the enemy.
facere in hostem to attack the enemy.
signa inferre in hostem to attack the enemy.
impetum sustinere (B. G. 1. 26) to resist the attack, onset.
impetum excipere (Liv. 6. 12) to parry the attack.
in medios hostes se inciere to rush into the midst of the foe.
per medios hostes (median hostium aciem) to break through the enemy's centre.

Caesar's method of attack was usually this: the troops drawn up on rising ground charged at the double (concursus); when within range came emissio telorum or pilorum. This was followed up by a hand-to-hand mêlée (impetus gladiatorum).

manum (us) conserere cum hoste to come to close quarters.
signa conferre cum hoste to come to close quarters.
proelio concurririt (Sall. Iug. 59) the lines charge in battle one on another.
adversis hostibus occurrere to attack the enemy in the front.
aversos hostes aggredi to attack the enemy in the rear.
hostes a tergo adoriri to fight a pitched, orderly battle with an enemy.

iusto (opp. tumultuario) proelio conligere cum hoste (Liv. 35. 4) the line of battle gives way.
acies inclinat or inclinatur (Liv. 7. 33) the issue of the battle is undecided.
proelium anceps est the issue of the day was for a long time uncertain.

The triarii were the veterans who made up the third line behind the principes and hastati. If these first two lines were beaten or in difficulties (laborare), the triarii, who were in a kneeling posture (dextro genu innixi, Liv. 8. 9), stood up (consurgebant, Liv. 8. 10) and continued the fight. Hence this proverb (inde rem ad triarios redisse cum laboratur proverbio increbuit). For the organisation of the legion in general vid. Liv. book 8.

(c) Close Quarters

collatis signis (viribus) pugnare to fight hand-to-hand, at close quarters.
tum pes cum pede collatus est (Liv. 28. 2) a hand-to-hand engagement ensued.
collato pede (Liv. 6. 12) hand to hand.
gladio comminus (opp. eminus) rem gerere to fight with swords at close quarters.
omissis pilis gladiis rem gerere swords must now decide the day.
res ad gladios venit swords must now decide the day.
res gladiis geri coepta est the fighting is now at close quarters.
strictis gladiis in hostem ferri to throw oneself on the enemy with drawn sword.
res ad manus venit the fighting is now at close quarters.
laxatis (opp. confertis) ordinibus pugnare to fight in open order.
ferarum ritu pugnare to fight like lions.

impetus is not used in the dative sing. or in the plur.; these cases are supplied by incursio.

signa conferre cum aliquo also sometimes means to join forces.

The triarii were the veterans who made up the third line behind the principes and hastati. If these first two lines were beaten or in difficulties (laborare), the triarii, who were in a kneeling posture (dextro genu innixi, Liv. 8. 9), stood up (consurgebant, Liv. 8. 10) and continued the fight. Hence this proverb (inde rem ad triarios redisse cum laboratur proverbio increbuit). For the organisation of the legion in general vid. Liv. book 8.
manu fortis personally brave.

(d) Tactics—Reinforcements

in latus hostium incurrere to fall upon the enemy's flank.
circumvenire hostem aversum or a tergo (B. G. 2. 26) to surround the enemy from the rear.
multitudine hostium cingi to be surrounded by the superior force of the enemy.
equitatu superiorem esse to have the advantage in cavalry.
parem (opp. imparem) esse hosti to be a match for the enemy.
orbem facere (Sall. Iug. 97. 5) to form a square.
in orbem consistere to form a square.
cuneum facere (Liv. 22. 47) to draw up troops in a wedge-formation.
phalangem facere (B. G. 1. 24) to form a phalanx.
phalangem perfringere to break through the phalanx.
subsidia summittere to send up reserves.
integros defatigatis summittere to send fresh troops to take the place of those wearied with fighting.
rari dispersique pugnare (B. C. 1. 44) fresh troops relieve the tired men.

(e) Successful Attack

pellere hostem to repulse the enemy.
acies hostium impellitur the enemy's line is repulsed.
loco movere, depellere, deicere hostem (B. G. 7. 51) to drive the enemy from his position.
summovere or reicere hostium equites to repel the attack of the enemy's cavalry.
repellere, propulsare hostem to repulse an attack.
undique premi, urgeri (B. G. 2. 26) to be pressed on all sides.
prosternere, profligare hostem to rout the enemy.

(f) Retreat—Flight—Pursuit

signa receptui canunt the retreat is sounded.
receptui canitur (B. G. 7. 47) the retreat is sounded.
pedem referre to retire (without turning one's back on the enemy).
equitatus tutum receptum dat the cavalry covers the retreat.
se recipere (B. G. 7. 20) to withdraw one's forces.
loco excedere to abandon one's position.
in fugam dare, conciere hostem to put the enemy to flight.
fugare hostem to put the enemy to flight.

---

302 The Latin language uses the general term (fera) where we use the special (lion). Similarly pecorum modo fugiunt (Liv. 40. 27), where we translate "they flee like deer."

303 orbis properly a circle, but corresponding almost exactly in its objects to our square-formation (vid. B. G. 4. 37, 5. 33; Sall. Iug. 97. 5). For a good account of Roman military formation see Kraner, Uebersicht des Kriegswesens bei Caesar, in his edition of the Bellum Gallicum.
fundere hostium copias
caedere et fundere hostem
fundere et fugare hostem
praes agere hostem
fugam facere (Sall. Iug. 53)
terga vertere or dare
terga dare hosti
fugae se mandare (B. G. 2. 24)
fugam capessere, capere
se dare in fugam, fugae
se conicere, se conferre in fugam
fuga salutem petere
fuga effusa, praeceps (Liv. 30. 5)
pecorum modo fugere (Liv. 40. 27)
arma abicere
praecipitem se fugae mandare
ex (in) fuga dissipati or dispersi (B. G. 2. 24)
hostes insequi, prosequi
hostes (fusos) persequi
hostes assequi, consequi
fugientibus instare
tergis hostium inhaerere
fugam hostium reprimere (B. G. 3. 14)
excipere aliquem fugientem
magna caedes hostium fugientium facta est
capere aliquem vivum
efugere, elabi e manibus hostium
dimittere e manibus hostes
eripere aliquem e manibus hostium
se fuga recipere (B. G. 1. 11)

to rout the enemy's forces.
to utterly rout the enemy.
to utterly rout the enemy.
to drive the enemy before one.
(1) to put to flight, (2) to take to flight.
to flee, run away.
to run away from the enemy.
to take to flight.
to take to flight.
to take to flight.
to take to flight.
to take to flight.
to take to flight.
to seek safety in flight.
headlong flight.
to flee like deer, sheep.
to throw away one's arms.
to flee headlong.
soldiers routed and dispersed.
to pursue the enemy.
to follow up and harass the enemy when in flight.
to overtake the enemy.
to press the fugitives.
to be on the heels of the enemy.
to bring the flying enemy to a stand.
to cut off some one's flight.
there was great slaughter of fugitives.
to take a person alive.
to escape from the hands of the enemy.
to let the enemy escape.
to rescue some one from the hands of the enemy.
to save oneself by flight.
to be defeated in fight, lose the battle.
to inflict a defeat on the enemy.
to suffer a defeat.
to cause great slaughter, carnage.
to massacre.
all have perished by the sword.
to annihilate, cut up the enemy, an army.
to absolutely annihilate the enemy.
to absolutely annihilate the enemy.
to wound a person (also used metaphorically).
to inflict a mortal wound on some one.
to be (seriously, mortally) wounded.
multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus (B. G. 1. 50)
vulneribus confectus
vulnera (cicatrices) adversa (opp. aversa)
vulnera adverso corpore accepta
refricare vulnus, cicatricem obductam
ex vulnere mori (Fam. 10. 33)
magno cum detrimento
nostri circiter centum ceciderunt
ad unum omnes perierunt

after many had been wounded on both sides.
weakened by wounds.
wounds (scars) on the breast.
wounds (scars) on the breast.
to open an old wound.
to die of wounds.
with great loss.
about a hundred of our men fell.
they perished to a man.

11. Victory—Triumph

exercitus victor
superiorem (opp. inferiorem), victorem
(proelio, pugna) discedere
victoriam adipsici, parere
victoriam ferre, referre
proelio vincere
victoriam reportare ab hoste
victoriam praecipere (animo) (Liv. 10. 26)
victoriam exploratam dimittere

the victorious army.
to come off victorious.
to gain a victory, win a battle.
to gain a victory, win a battle.
to gain a victory over the enemy.
to consider oneself already victor.
to let a sure victory slip through one's hands.
as if the victory were already won.
to raise a shout of victory.
to congratulate a person on his victory.
the victory cost much blood and many wounds, was very dearly bought.
to triumph over some one.
to triumph over some one.
to lead some one in triumph.
the senate decrees to Africanus the honours of a triumph.

12. Truce—Peace—Treaties—Alliance

indutias facere (Phil. 8. 7)
indutias violare
ius gentium violare
agere cum aliquo de pace
pacem conciliare (Fam. 10. 27)
to make a truce.
to break a truce.
to violate the law of nations.
to treat with some one about peace.
to bring about a peace.

---

304 refricare is also used metaphorically in the sense of renewing, recalling, e.g. dolorem (De Or. 2. 48); memoriam (Phil. 3. 7. 18); desiderium (Fam. 5. 17. 4).
305 The phrase ad unum omnes, to a man, without exception, occurs De Am. 23. 86; Fam. 12. 14; Liv. 2. 55; and without omnes, Fam. 10. 16; B. C. 3. 14.
306 E.g. triumphum agere Boiorum (Liv.); Pharsaliae pugnae (Cic.); de Liguribus (Liv.); ex Aequis (Liv.)
For other phrases cf. triumphum postulare, imperare; triumphum tertium deportare; triumphum consulis celebrare.
pacem facere cum aliquo
to make peace with some one.
pacem dirimere, frangere
to break the peace.
his condicionibus
on these terms.
pacis condiciones ferre (not proponere)
to propose terms of peace.
pacis condiciones dare, dicere alicui (Liv. 29. 12)
to dictate the terms of peace to some one.
pacis condiciones accipere, subire (opp. repudiare, respuere)
to accept the terms of the peace.
pax convenit in eam condicionem, ut...
peace is concluded on condition that...
summa pax
deep peace.
captivos permutare, commutare
to exchange prisoners.
captivos redimere (Off. 2. 18)
to ransom prisoners.
captivos sine pretio reddere
to restore prisoners without ransom.
obsides dare
to give hostages.
obsides civilitabus imperare
to compel communities to provide hostages.
pactionem facere cum aliquo (Sall. Iug. 40)
to conclude a treaty with some one.
ex pacto, ex foedere
to conclude a treaty, an alliance.
foedus facere (cum aliquo), icere, ferire
to violate a treaty, terms of alliance.
foedus frangere, rumpere, violare
to violate a treaty, terms of alliance.
socium aliquem asciscere (B. G. 1. 5)
to make some one one’s ally.
in amicitia populi Romani esse (Liv. 22. 37)
to be on friendly terms with the Roman people.
a senatu amicus appellatus est (B. G. 1. 3)
he received from the senate the title of friend.

13. Conquest—Submission

terra potiri
to conquer a country.
terram suae dicionis facere
to reduce a country to subjection to oneself.
populum in potestatem suam redigere (B. G. 2. 34)
to reduce a country to subjection to oneself.
populum in ditionem venire cogere
to accept the submission of a people.
populum perdomare, subigere
to subjugate a nation.
populum, terram suo imperio, suae potestati subicere (not sib by itself)
to make oneself master of a people, country.
se imperio alcius subicere (not alicui)
to make one’s submission to some one.
in ditionem venire (without alicui)
to make one’s submission to some one.
in alcius potestatem se permittere
to make one’s submission to some one, under some one’s dominion.
sub imperio et dicione alcius esse
to be subject to some one, under some one’s dominion.
subiectum esse, obnoxium esse imperio or dicioni alcius (not simply alicui)
to be subject to some one, under some one’s dominion.
in potestate, in dicione alcius esse
to be subject to some one, under some one’s dominion.
qui imperio subiecti sunt
to reduce a people to their former obedience.

amicus, the friend of the Roman people, distinct from socius, an ally; a socius was always amicus, but not necessarily vice versa. The title amicus populi Romani was granted by the senate to foreign princes in recognition of some signal service.
ali quem in officio continere  
in officio manere, permanere  
Asiam in provinciae formam (in provinciam) redigere (B. G. 1. 45)  
Asia populi Romani facta est gentem ad internecionem redigere or adducere (B. G. 2. 28)

to keep some one in subjection.  
to remain in subjection.  
to make Asia into a Roman province.  
Asia was made subject to Rome.  
to completely annihilate a nation.

XVI .  Shipping

1. Naval Affairs in General

navis actuar ia  
navis longa  
navis oneraria  
navis mercatoria  
oppidum maritim um  
navibus plurimum posse  
rebus maritimis multum valere  
navem, classem edificare, facere, efficere, instituere  
navem ( classem) armare, ornare, instruere  
navem deducere (vid. sect. XII. 1, note Notice too...)

navem subducere (in aridum)  
navem reficere  
navem conscendere, ascendere  
exercitum in naves imponere (Liv. 22. 19)  
milites in terram, in terra exponere  
classiar ii 308 (B. C. 3. 100)  
nautae, remiges  
vectores (Phil. 7. 9. 27)  
naves anotinae

to equip a boat, a fleet.  
to launch a boat.  
to haul up a boat.  
to repair a boat.  
to embark.  
to embark an army.  
to disembark troops.  
marines.  
sailors, rowers.  
passengers.  
ships of last year.

2. Voyage—Shipwreck—Landing

solvere (B. G. 4. 28)  
navem (naves) solvere  
ancoram (ancoras) tollere  
naves ex portu solvunt  
malacia et tranquillitas (B. G. 3. 15)  
vela in altum dare (Liv. 25. 27)  
ventum (tempestatem) nanci idoneum ex portu exuent  
vela facere, pandere

to weigh anchor, sail.  
to weigh anchor, sail.  
to weigh anchor, sail.  
the ships sail from the harbour.  
a dead calm.  
to put to sea.  
the ships sail out on a fair wind.  
to set the sails.

308 Also classici milites, classica legio (Liv. 21. 41; 22. 19). The marines were recruited from the lowest classes (capite censi) and from the liberti. The rowers were slaves; the ordinary sailors were socii navales.
vela dare
to set the sails.
vela contrahere (also metaph.)
to furl the sails.
oram legere (Liv. 21. 51)
to hug the coast.
superare insulam, promunturium
to double an island, cape.
ventis reflantibus (Tusc. 1. 49)
with the wind against one.
cursum dirigere aliquo
to set one's course for a place.
cursum tenere (opp. commutare and deferri)
to hold on one's course.
cursum conficere (Att. 5. 12. 1)
to finish one's voyage.
gubernaculum tractare
to steer.
clavum tenere
to steer.
navem remis agere or propellere
to row.
remis contendere
to row hard.
navem remis concitare, incitare
to row hard.
sustainere, inhibere remos (De Or. 1. 33)
to stop rowing; to easy.
navem retro inhibere (Att. 13. 21)
to back water.
naufragium facere
the ship strikes on the rocks.
vento se dare
the storm drives some one on an unknown
coast.
in littus eici (B. G. 5. 10)
to be stranded.
deferri, deici aliquo
the ship is driven out of one's course; to drift.
tempestate abripi
the storm drives some one on an unknown
coast.
procella (tempestas) aliquem ex alto ad
the storm drives some one on an unknown
coast.
ignotas terras (oras) defert
to collect the wreckage.
naufragium colligere (Sest. 6. 15)
to land (of people).
appellere navem (ad terram, litus)
to land (of ships).
appelli (ad oram) (Att. 13. 21)
to weigh anchor.
ancares iacere
to make fast boats to anchors.
ancares tollere
ad ancoras deligare (B. G. 4. 29)
to make fast boats to anchors.
naves (classem) constituere (in alto)
to row hard.
ad ancoram consistere
the admiral's ship; the flagship.
ad ancoras deligari
the storm drives some one on an unknown
coast.
in ancoris esse, stare, consistere
to ride at anchor.
exire ex, de navi
to ride at anchor.
exire, egredi in terram
to land, disembark.
escensionem facere (of troops)
to land, disembark.
opertu, terra prohiberi (B. C. 3. 15)
to be unable to land.
litora ac portus custodia clausos tenere
to keep the coast and harbours in a state of
blockade.
deperire
at high tide.
aestu incitato

3. A Naval Battle

navis praetoria (Liv. 21. 49)
to fight a battle at sea.
pugnam navalem facere
navem expedire
navem rostro percutere
navem expugnare

For a description of a sea-fight vid. B. G. iii. 13-16.
navem, classem deprimere, mergere
classes concurrunt (Liv. 26. 39)
copulas, manus ferreas (in navem) incidere
in navem (hostium) transcendere
navem capere, intercipere, deprehendere
vela armamentaque
ex eo navium concursu magnum
incommodum est acceptum
navigia speculatoria
to sink a ship, a fleet.
the fleets charge.
to throw grappling irons on board; to board.
to throw grappling irons on board; to board.
to capture a boat.
sails and rigging.
much damage was done by this collision.
reconnoitring-vessels.
APPENDIX

ut ait Ciceron (always in this order) as Cicero says.

ut Ciceronis verbis utar to use Cicero's expression; to say with Cicero (not ut cum Cicerone loquar).

ut ita dicam so to speak (used to modify a figurative expression).

ut non (nihil) dicam de... not to mention...

ut plura non dicam to say nothing further on...

ne dicam not to say... (used in avoiding a stronger expression).

ne (quid) gravius dicam to say the least...

ut breviter dicam to put it briefly.

ne multa, quid plura? sed quid opus est in short; to be brief.

ut brevi comprehendam in short; to be brief.

ut brevi praecidam in short; to be brief.

ut eorum, quae dixi, summam faciam to sum up...

ne longum sit not to be prolix.

ne longus, multus sim not to be prolix.

ne diutius vos demorer not to be prolix.

ne in re nota et pervulgata multus sim not to be diffuse on such a well-known subject.

ut levissime dicam (opp. ut gravissimo verbo utar) to use the mildest expression.

ut planius dicam to express myself more plainly.

ut verius dicam to put it more exactly.

ut semel or in perpetuum dicam to say once for all.

ut in eodem simili verser to use the same simile, illustration.

ut hoc utar or afferam to use this example.

dicom quad sentio I will give you my true opinion.

ne nego, non infitior I do not deny.

dici vix (non) potest de aliqua re this can be said of..., applies to...

hoc dici potest de aliqua re this can be said of..., applies to...

hoc cadit in aliquid this can be said of..., applies to...

hoc transferri potest in aliquid I said en passant, by the way.

dixi quasi praeteriens or in transitu I have said it a thousand times.

sexcenties, millies dixi as I said above.

ut supra (opp. infra) diximus, dictum est I cannot find words for...

dixi vix (non) potest or vix potest dici (vix like non always before potest)

incredibile dictu est it sounds incredible.

supersedeo oratione (not dicere) I avoid mentioning...; I prefer not to touch upon...

omitto dicere I avoid mentioning...; I prefer not to touch upon...

haec habeo dicere or habeo quae dicam this I have to say.

haec (fero) dixit he spoke (very much) as follows.
hanc in sententiam dixit
mihi quaedam dicenda sunt de hac re
quod vere praedicare possum
quod non arroganter dixerim
pace tua dixerim or dicere liceat
bona (cum) venia tua dixerim
non est huius loci c. Inf.
non est hic locus, ut...

dec est de hoc alias pluribus
atque or sed haec (quidem) hactenus

atque haec quidem de...

ac (sed) de ... satis dixi, dictum est

haec (quidem) ille
haec Ciceronis fere
atque etiam hoc animadvertendum est
ad reliqua pergamus, progrediamur
hic (ille) locus obscurus est
hoc in medio relinquamus
sed labor longius
non id ad vivum reseco (Lael. 5. 8)
nonnulla praedictam
ut omittam c. Accus.
cum discessi, -eris, -eritis ab
praeter c. Accus.

ut praetermittam c. Acc. c. Inf.
praeterquam quod or nisi quod
hoc in promptu est
hoc in aperto est
hoc est luce (sole ipso) clarius
hoc facile intellegi potest
hoc per se intellegitur
hoc sua sponte apparent
ex quo intellegitur or intellegi potest, debet
ex quo perspicuum est
inde patet, apparent
apparet et exstat
exstat atque eminet
si quaeris, si verum quaerimus
id quod maximum, gravissimum est
quod caput est
quod maius est
testis est, testatur, declarat
documento, indicio est (without demonstr.
pron. but cui rei documento, indicio est)

sed hoc nihil (sane) ad rem
aliquid (r 1 ) dicis (opp. nihil dicis)
est istuc quidem aliquid

audio, fatoer

the tenor of his speech was this...
I have a few words to say on this.
without wishing to boast, yet...
which I can say without offence, arrogance.
allow me to say.
allow me to say.
this is not the place to...
this is not the place to...
more of this another time.
so much for this subject...; enough has been
said on...
so much for this subject...; enough has been
said on...
this much he said.
this is very much what Cicero said.
there is this also to notice.

to pass on.
this passage is obscure.
let us leave that undecided.
but that takes us too far.
I do not take that too strictly.
I wish to say a few words in preface.
putting aside, except.
putting aside, except.
putting aside, except.
to except the fact that...
to except the fact that...
it is clear, evident.
it is clear, evident.
this is as clear as daylight.
that is self-evident, goes without saying.
that is self-evident, goes without saying.
that is self-evident, goes without saying.

from this it appears, is apparent.
from this it appears, is apparent.
from this it appears, is apparent.

it is quite manifest.

it is quite manifest.
to put it exactly.
the main point.
the main point.
what is more important.
this shows, proves...
this shows, proves...

but this is not to the point.
there is something in what you say; you are
more or less right.
there is something in what you say; you are
more or less right.
I admit it, say on.
ain tu?  
donne?

quorsum haec (dicis)?

male (opp. bene) narras (de)

monstra dicis, narras

clarius loquere

mihi crede (not crede mihi)

per me licet

rem acu tetigisti

ita prorsus existimo

ita res est

res ita (aliter) se habet

nec mirum, minime mirum (id quidem), quid mirum?

neque id mirum est or videri debet

et recte (iure, merito)

recte, iure id quidem

neque immerito (iniuria)

neque id immerito (iniuria)

meo (tuo, suo) iure

iusto iure

iustissime, rectissime

optimo iure (cf. summo iure, sect. XV. 1).

macte virtute (esto or te esse iubeo)

sed manum de tabula!

do you think so? are you in earnest?  
is it not so?

what do you mean?

I am sorry to hear...

it is incredible.

speak up, please.

believe me.

I have no objection.

you have hit the nail on the head.

that is exactly what I think.

it is so.

the matter stands so (otherwise).

no wonder.

there is nothing strange in that.

quite rightly.

quite rightly.

and rightly too.

and rightly too.

with perfect right.

with perfect right.

legitimately; with the fullest right.

legitimately; with the fullest right.

good luck to you.

but enough!

FINIS